ŠKODA

Printing, reproduction, translation or other use of this work or any part thereof is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

All proprietary rights in this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2022

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

Partner ŠKODA

Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.

Customer's signature

Vehicle owner

1. Vehicle owner

Official vehicle registration number:

_____

Vehicle owner (Title, Name / Company):

_____

Address:

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

2. Vehicle owner

Official vehicle registration number:

_____

Vehicle owner (Title, Name / Company):

_____

Address:

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle handover documentation

2 Vehicle owner

10 About the Owner's Manual

11 About this document

12 Video tutorials

13 Explanations

14 Instructions in infotainment
14 Functionality

17 Vehicle overviews
17 Front and lateral areas of the vehicle
18 Rear vehicle area
19 Driver's seat
20 Centre console and passenger seat
21 Space under the front flap

22 Warning lights
22 Functionality
22 Warning lights overview

28 Correct and safe
28 Introductory notes for correct use
28 New vehicle or new parts
28 Regular checks
29 Improper vehicle adjustments
29 Sensor and camera maintenance
29 Space under the front flap
30 Handling fluids
30 12 volt vehicle battery
31 Electrical sockets in the vehicle
31 Before your journey
31 Sitting safely
32 Correct belt webbing arrangement
32 Correct steering wheel position
33 Securing children properly
33 Transporting objects safely
34 Safe driving
35 Stop the vehicle safely!
35 Exiting the vehicle
36 Different weather conditions
36 Emergency call
37 After an accident

39 Keys, locks and alarm system
39 Key
41 Central locking
44 Keyless locking
45 Alarm system

47 Doors, windows and boot lid
47 Doors
47 Child safety lock on the rear doors
48 Window – with electrical operation
50 Sliding/tilting roof
52 Sun visors – with electrical operation
52 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
53 Sun visors
53 Boot lid – with manual operation
54 Boot lid – with electrical control
56 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
57 Unlocking the boot lid

58 Seats, steering wheel and mirror
58 Front seat – with manual operation
58 Front seat – with electrical operation
59 Memory function of the seat
60 Seat massage function
61 Rear seats
62 Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment
62 Park position of rear seat belts
62 Headrests
63 Sleep package
63 Front armrest
64 Rear armrest
64 Load-through device
65 Steering wheel
66 Interior rear-view mirror
67 Wing mirror

69 Restraint systems and airbags
69 Seat belts
71 Child seat
74 Fasteners for child seats
80 Airbags
82 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

84 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
84 Exterior lighting
86 Daylight running lights
86 Automatic driving lights function
87 High beam and headlight flasher
87 Turn signal
88 Lights for bad weather
88 Rear fog light
89 Hazard warning lights function
89 Parking light function
89 Adaptive functions of the headlights
90 Function COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME
90 High-beam assist system Light Assist
91 Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist
92 Replace light bulbs
93 Interior lighting
94 Interior background lighting
96 Windscreen wipers and washers

100 Heating and air conditioning system
100 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
106 Stand-by air conditioning
107 Heated windscreen
108 Seat heating and ventilation
109 Heated steering wheel

110 Driver information system
110 Digital cockpit
111 Head-up display with augmented reality
112 Driving data
113 Vehicle status
114 Button SET

115 Familiarization with infotainment
115 Infotainment overview
117 HOME menu
118 Preferred functions
118 MENU menu
118 Configuration wizard
118 System
119 Sound

121 Infotainment operation
121 Operation on the screen
122 Keyboard
123 Control Centre
124 Voice control

127 Radio
127 FM Radio
130 DAB radio
133 WEB radio and podcasts

137 Media
137 Player
138 Manage files

142 Mobile device management
142 Mobile device management

146 Telephone
146 Using the phone
148 Manage contacts
149 Telephone conversation
150 Conference call
150 SMS
151 Email
152 Voice mailbox

153 Wi-Fi
153 WLAN use

156 SmartLink
156 Use of SmartLink Function
158 Android Auto
159 Apple CarPlay
161 MirrorLink

162 Navigation
162 Map
165 Find destination
166 Predictive destinations
167 Last destinations
168 Favourites
168 Route guidance
171 Demo mode

172 Online Services
172 ŠKODA Connect
173 MyŠKODA application
174 Data connection
175 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services
175 Setting personal data protection

177 User management
180 Personalisation
180 Online System Update
181 Shop
182 Information call
183 Breakdown call
183 ŠKODA Connect-Services

185 Starting-off and Driving
185 Switch on the ignition
186 Automatic gearbox
187 Vehicle driving mode
188 Energy recovery
189 Economical driving style
189 Towing a trailer
190 Towing eye and towing procedure
192 Brakes
194 Electric parking brake
195 Auto Hold automatic holding function
196 Electronic engine sound (e-sound)

197 Driver assist systems
197 Braking and stabilising systems
199 Front Assist
200 Pedestrian detection system
201 Speed limiter
202 Cruise control system
204 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
208 Lane Assist
210 Travel Assist
212 Lane change assist system Side Assist
214 Traffic Sign Recognition
215 Crew Protect Assist
216 Driver Alert
216 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist
217 Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

218 Park Assist systems
218 Park Pilot parking aid
219 Rear view camera
221 Area View, Top View
223 Rear Traffic Alert
224 Exit warning
225 Intelligent park steering assistant
228 Park steering assistant with memory function

230 High-voltage system
230 High-voltage system and high-voltage battery
232 Range
233 Available mileage

235 Charging
235 General information on charging
241 Charging with alternating current (AC)
242 Charging with direct current (DC)
244 Charging set-up

247 Charging cables
247 General information on charging cables
248 Charging cable Mode 3
248 Universal charging cable

255 Space under the front flap
255 Front flap
256 Coolant

258 12 volt vehicle battery and fuses
258 12 volt vehicle battery
261 Using the jump-starting cable
262 Fuses
263 Fuses in the dash panel
266 Fuses in the space under the front flap

268 Wheels
268 Tyres and rims
270 All-season or winter tires
271 Snow chains
271 SEAL tyres
271 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
274 Breakdown kit
276 Tyre pressure
277 Tyre pressure monitor
278 Wheel bolt cover caps
278 Full wheel frame

280 Storage space and interior equipment
280 Equipment in the boot
280 Emergency equipment
281 Tool kit
282 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
282 Fasteners in the boot
283 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
284 Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot
284 Cargo elements in the luggage space
284 Fastening nets
284 Net partition
285 Double-sided floor covering
285 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
286 Variable loading floor in the boot
287 Organizer in the boot
287 Charging cable pocket
288 Interior equipment front
289 Removable compartment under the armrest
290 Removable compartment under the armrest that can be closed
290 Interior equipment rear
291 Storage compartment in the centre console
292 Storage pocket for phone
292 Car park ticket holder
293 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
293 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
294 USB-connections
295 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
295 Pen holder
296 Storage space for cards and coins
296 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
296 Storage compartment for an umbrella
297 Phonebox
298 Cup holder
299 Cup holder Easy Open
299 Ashtray
300 Folding table
300 Ceiling
301 Storage compartment for the tablet
301 12-Volt power socket
301 230-Volt power socket
302 230 volt socket and USB connections

303 Roof rack and hitch
303 Roof rack
303 Swivelling hitch

308 Maintaining and cleaning
308 Service events
308 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
309 Interior
311 Exterior
314 Ice scraper

315 Technical data and specifications
315 Requirements for the technical data
315 Vehicle identification data
316 Maximum permissible weights
317 Operating weight
317 Vehicle dimensions
318 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
318 Personal data
319 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
325 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
325 Product recycling
326 Trademarks Information
326 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

330 Engine specifications
330 Electric engine 109 kW
330 Electric engine 132 kW
330 Electric engine 150 kW
330 Electric engine 195 kW
330 Electric engine 220 kW

331 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle *» page 14*
- On ŠKODA website.
- In MyŠKODA mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq

About this document

The essentials in a nutshell

With the environment in mind, this printed document contains only basic information about the safety, operation and functions of the vehicle or emergency procedures.

The contents of this document were the subject of a revision at the time your car was manufactured. As a result, some information contained here may not be identical to the digital version of the Owner's Manual, which can be modified and further updated by ŠKODA AUTO if necessary, thanks to the remote update function. Therefore, in the event of a conflict, the information in the digital version of the Owner's Manual will take precedence over the information in this printed document.

This document does not replace the complete Owner's Manual. Therefore, read the complete Owner's Manual before using the vehicle and follow the complete Owner's Manual in the first instance.

The complete Owner's Manual can be found in digital form at the following locations:

› In the Infotainment system of your vehicle ***» page 14***
› In mobile application MyŠKODA
› On website ŠKODA

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq

Video tutorials

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq

Overview of video tutorials

An overview of the video tutorials appearing in this manual.

- Front Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 200***
- ACC – setting ***» page 208***
- Lane Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 210***
- Side Assist – setting ***» page 214***
- Climatronic – control ***» page 106***
- Multifunction steering wheel – operation ***» page 66***
- Head-up display with augmented reality – operation ***» page 112***
- The Infotainment system – operation on the display ***» page 122***
- Navigation – search for a charging station ***» page 166***
- MyŠKODA application – remote charging ***» page 246***

Explanations

“Specialist garage”
“Specialist garage” is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a ŠKODA Authorised workshop or ŠKODA Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Authorised workshop ŠKODA
“An authorised workshop of ŠKODA” is a garage that is contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Partner ŠKODA
“A Partner of ŠKODA” is a company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes
“**Pressing**” – short press (e.g. of a button) for up to 1 second

“**Holding**” – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications
All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units
Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

⚠ DANGER
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE
Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Instructions in infotainment

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in this way:

› Tap MENU > > on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.

If is not displayed, check for available system updates » *page 119*.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

› How to search
› Interactive images
› Symbols
› Topics
› Tutorial videos
› About the manual

Search

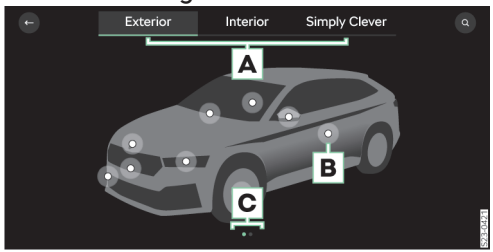
1. Tap .
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

Or:

› Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

› To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
› When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
› If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

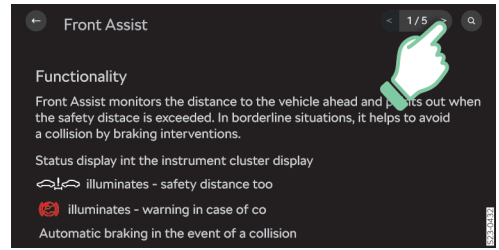
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

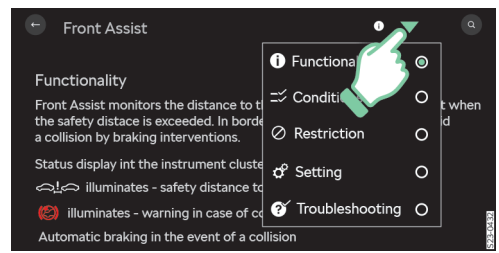


› To display more information, press **>** or **<**.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press **▼**.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car
› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

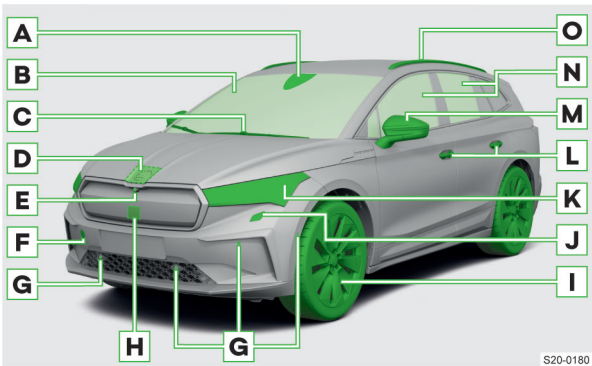
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and lateral areas of the vehicle



A Under the windscreen:
- Camera for assist systems
- Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit *» page 86*
- Rain sensor for automatic wiping *» page 96*
- Sensors for humidity and solar radiation

B Windscreen – heating *» page 107*

C Windscreen wiper – operation *» page 96*

D Bonnet release lever (under the flap). *» page 255*

E Camera for assist systems

F Cover for screw-in towing eye socket *» page 191*

G Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

H Front radar sensor for assistance systems (under the cover)

I Wheels:
- Tyres and rims *» page 268*
- Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle *» page 271*
- Breakdown kit *» page 275*.
- Tyre pressure *» page 276*
- Tyre pressure monitor *» page 277*

J Headlamp cleaning system *» page 96*

K Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation *» page 84*
- Light Assist high-beam assist system *» page 90*
- Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist *» page 91*

› Bad weather light » page 88
› Replacing the light bulb » page 92

L Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
› Open door » page 47
› Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 44

M Exterior mirror (depending on vehicle equipment):
› Operation » page 67
› Camera for assist systems

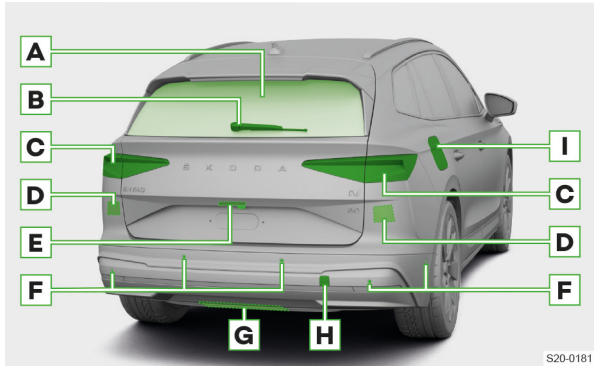
N Side door windows – operation » page 49.

O Roof rack » page 303

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 29.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window – heating » page 107

B Rear window wiper and washer – operation » page 96

C Tail lights:
› Operation » page 84
› Rear fog light – operation » page 88

Rear fog light is only on the driver´s side

D Radar sensors for assist systems (inside bumper)

E Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment).
› Boot lid with manual operation » page 53
› Boot lid with electrical operation » page 54
› Assist systems camera

F Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

G Swivel towing bracket » page 303

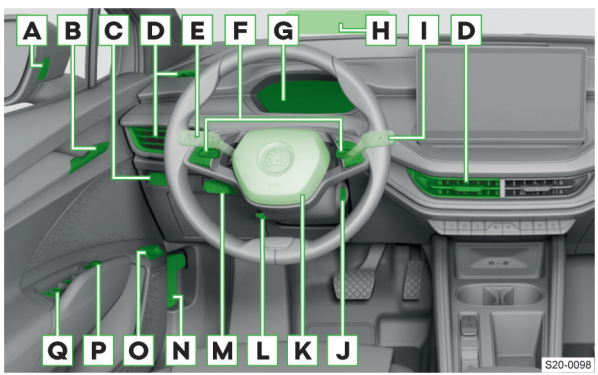
H Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 191

I High-voltage battery charging socket cover:
› Charging socket overview » page 235

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 29.

Driver's seat



A Indicator light of lane change assistant Side Assist » page 212

B Door handle » page 47

C Light switches:
› Exterior lighting » page 84
› Lights for bad weather » page 88
› Rear fog light » page 88

D Air outlet nozzle

E Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
› Turn signal » page 87
› High beam » page 87
› Cruise control system » page 203
› Speed limiter » page 201
› High beam assistant » page 91
› Headlight Assistant » page 92

F Buttons/dials on the multi-function steering wheel » page 65

G Instrument cluster:
› Digital cockpit » page 110

H Head-up display (on windscreen) » page 111

I Operating lever:
› Wipers and washers » page 96

J Starter button » page 185

K Steering wheel with horn and driver's front airbag » page 80

L Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 65

M Adaptive cruise control » page 205

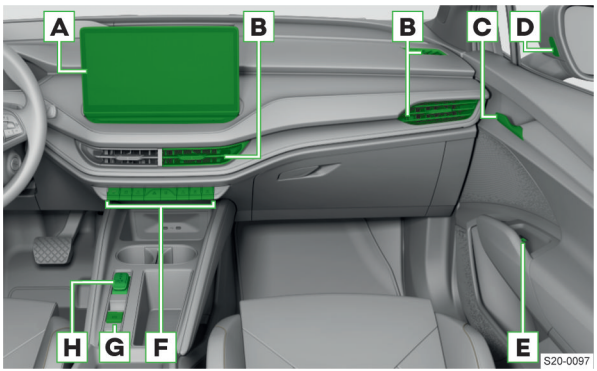
N Unlocking the bonnet » page 255

O Button for electrically operated boot lid » page 54

P Wing mirror operation » page 67

Q Window operation » page 49

Centre console and passenger seat



A 13 "or 10" Infotainment » page 115

B Air outlet nozzle

C Door opening lever » page 47

D Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 212

E Window operation in the passenger door » page 49

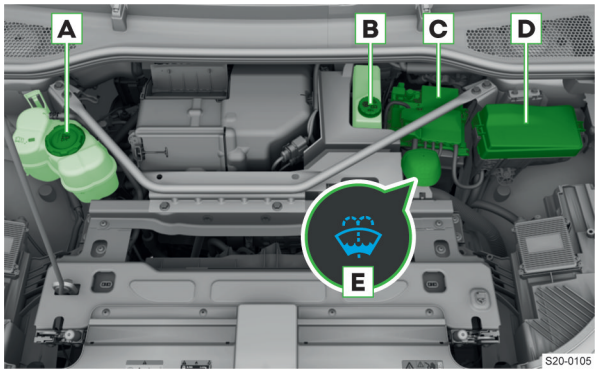
F Keys (depending on vehicle equipment):

- SET Quick access to the settings of specific vehicle systems (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Interior monitoring » page 46
  - Tyre pressure monitor » page 277
  - Access to other vehicle settings
  - Access to selection and settings for driver assistance systems
- MODE Driving mode selection » page 187
- P ASSIST Menu with Park Assist systems » page 218
- Hazard warning lights function » page 89
- Central locking » page 42
- CLIMA Display of the air conditioner operating screen in the Infotainment screen » page 101
- MAX Quick ventilation/defrosting of the windscreen
- REAR Heated rear window » page 107

G Button (P) – parking brake » page 194

H Automatic gearbox selector lever » page 186

Space under the front flap



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 256

B Brake fluid reservoir » page 193

C 12 volt vehicle battery » page 258

D Fuse box » page 266

E Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 98

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the illuminated indicator lights and associated messages on the instrument cluster display may result in accidents, serious injury or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights

The additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ – Hazard

⚠ – Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

For further details ***» page 22, Functionality***.

Link to the digital Owner's Manual:
https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a hazard in conjunction with another warning lamp ***» page 22***.
	Front and rear seat belts not in use ***» page 70***.

Symbol	Meaning
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » page 260.
	Inadequate mileage » page 234.
	Coolant level too low » page 257.
	Brake fluid level too low » page 193.
	Electromechanical brake booster faulty » page 199.
	In conjunction with – brake system and ABS faulty » page 199.
	Flashes –parking on a slope that is too steep » page 194.
	Lights up – parking brake switched on » page 194.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » page 66.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » page 66.
	Take control immediately » page 210.

Symbol	Meaning
	Electric drive system fault » page 232.
	High-voltage battery - fire hazard » page 231.
	Together with – overheated electrical system » page 232.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 199.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 205.
	Indicates a warning in conjunction with another warning lamp » page 22.
	Low state of charge of the high-voltage battery » page 239.
	Limited mileage » page 234.
	Fault / low state of charge of the 12-volt vehicle battery » page 260.
	Washer fluid level too low » page 98.
	Bulb faulty » page 86.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 88.
	The lights are not switched on » page 84.

Symbol	Meaning
	Parking brake error » page 194.
	Along with  - Recuperation error » page 189.
	Electronic engine noise failed » page 196.
	Electric drive system fault » page 232.
	ABS faulty » page 199.
	Worn brake pads » page 193.
	Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator faulty » page 277.
	Tyre pressure change » page 270, » page 277.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » page 66.
	Flashes – steering column lock not unlocked » page 66.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » page 66.
	KESSY – no key found » page 45.
	KESSY - problem with turning on the ignition » page 186.

Symbol	Meaning
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 188.
EPC	Fault in the engine control system » page 232.
	Front passenger airbag activated » page 82.
ON 	Flashes in conjunction with OFF  – key-operated switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 83.
OFF 	Front passenger airbag deactivated » page 82.
	Airbag system faulty » page 82.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 215.
	Lights up for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner with diagnostic device switched off » page 81.
	Ball rod not locked » page 305.
	ESC Sports enabled » page 198.
	Lights up – ESC or ASR faulty » page 198.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR intervening » page 197.

Symbol	Meaning
	Front Assist deactivated » page 200.
	Front Assist not available » page 200.
	ACC not available » page 208.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 209.
	Left turn signal » page 87, » page 88.
	Right turn signal » page 87, » page 88.
	Rear seat belt in use » page 70.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 88.
	Automatic gearbox locked » page 186.
AUTO HOLD	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 195.
	The high-voltage battery is charged » page 241, » page 243.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 209.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 205.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 202.
	Lights up – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 201.
	Travel Assist activated - the lane guidance is active » page 210.
	Travel Assist activated – the cruise control system is active » page 210.
	Travel Assist activated » page 210.
	Low outside temperature » page 110.
	Main beam or headlight flasher switched on » page 87.
	High beam assistant switched on – high beam is switched on » page 91. Headlight assistant switched on – high beam is switched on » page 92.
AUTO HOLD	Auto Hold is activated » page 195.

Symbol	Meaning
	Illuminated - unoccupied rear seat » page 70.
	Flashes – rear seat belt not fastened » page 70.
	Bad weather light switched on » page 88.
	Headlight assistant switched on » page 92.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 91.
	Take control » page 210.
	Service events » page 308.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 202.
	Lights up – speed limiter activated » page 201.
	ACC activated » page 204.
	ACC deactivated » page 205.
	Speed limiter deactivated » page 201.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout » page 205.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 205.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction » page 205.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 205.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 203.
	Cruise control activated » page 202.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 199.
	Safe distance not kept » page 199.
	Break recommendation » page 216.
	Driving mode Normal » page 187.
	Driving mode Eco » page 187.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 187.
	Individual Driving Mode » page 187.

Symbol	Meaning
	Sport Driving Mode » page 187.
	Traction driving mode » page 187.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the prescribed operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle **» page 317** can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- All work on the vehicle's safety systems may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This concerns e.g. the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 800 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres

New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

› Is the tyre undamaged?
› Is the tyre tread sufficient?
› Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
› Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
› Is the windscreen in good condition?
› Is the brake fluid and coolant level OK?
› Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
› Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
› Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
› Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
› Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
› Is the spoiler working properly?
› Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
› Are there no stains or operating fluids under the vehicle?
› Components of the high-voltage system, for example the orange-coloured high-voltage cable, are undamaged?

Improper vehicle adjustments

Improper changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect safety-relevant and other functions of the vehicle.

› Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

In some cases, dirt or ice and water on sensors and cameras may be detected as an obstruction or an interference with object detection.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras may also be limited for the following reasons:

› Accessories, such as a bicycle rack, are mounted on the rear of the vehicle.
› The sensors or cameras are covered by a licence plate holder, stickers, additional headlights, etc.

Therefore, observe the following instructions to ensure that the sensors and cameras function properly:

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
› If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Space under the front flap

Before opening the front flap

Risk of scalding! Do not open the front flap if steam or coolant comes out.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the sticker in the space under the front flap.



Do not reach into the space under the front flap!

Be careful of hot parts!

Be careful of rotating parts!

When working in the space under the front flap

- Keep children away from the space under the front flap.
- Follow the safety instructions listed in the chapter relating to the high-voltage system ***» page 230, What you should be mindful of***.
- Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system and in the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke near the vicinity of the front flap and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- Do not leave any objects in the space under the front flap.

Handling fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids that can affect health or the environment when emitted. This is the electrolyte in the 12-volt vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid.

- Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If necessary, wear protective equipment.
- Do not use or check operating fluids with the ignition switched on.
- In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If necessary, seek medical assistance.
- Store cloths soiled with brake fluid in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12 volt vehicle battery

Handling the 12-volt vehicle battery

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Improper handling of the 12 volt vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the 12-volt vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12-volt vehicle battery.

› Do not use a damaged 12-volt vehicle battery.
› Short circuit! The battery poles of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not connected.

Electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

› The sockets can get warm during operation. Do not touch sockets that have become warm.
› Protect sockets from liquids.
› If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
› Do not insert any objects into the contacts of the socket.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Follow the instructions below to insure optimal occupant protection in the event of an accident.

Before you set off

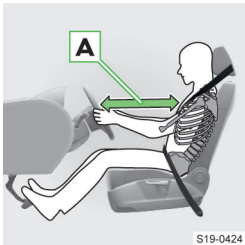
› Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach the navigation system or other external devices so that they do not obstruct your view.
› Adjust the rear-view mirrors.
› Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.
› Finish charging and close the charging socket.
› Assume the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that all passengers do the same.

  Always keep your seat belt on while driving.
› Only one person can be secured with one seat belt.
› Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g.in the door or in the seat.
› Check the seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, follow the instructions below:

› Place the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
› Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
› Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
› The headrest on the occupied rear seat should not be in the lower position, but the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
› Keep your feet in the footwell.
› Use the entire seat.
› Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
› Do not place any limbs out the window.



› Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be easily reached with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and the breastbone is at least. 25 cm.
› Adjust the angle of the backrest so that your hands rest on the top of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance from the dashboard at least 25 cm.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

› The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
› The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
› In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
› The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
› The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
› The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
› The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



› Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

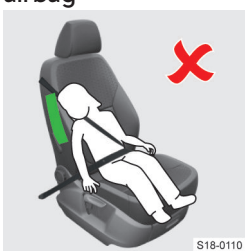
Securing children properly

› Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
› Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 73.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When transporting heavy objects, the centre of gravity of the vehicle changes, and so does the handling of the vehicle.

› Adjust the driving speed and style to allow for changed behaviour.

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

In a collision at 50 km/h, unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A thrown 1.5 litre water bottle can weigh up to 75 kg.

› Transport objects securely.
› Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver.
› Keep the driver footwell clear.
› Stow small items in the storage boxes.

› Do not leave lockable storage boxes open.
› Do not allow items to protrude out of compartments. This does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
› Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
› Secure vessels and packages with liquids against spillage. Spilled liquids can damage the interior and electrical installation.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
An electric car is hardly audible when driving or stopping. Other road users may not hear it.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assist systems

The assist systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The assist systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assist systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assist systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

› When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
› Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assist systems may also be different.

› Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.
› Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

Driving through water

Water must not penetrate into the vehicle systems.

› Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, and do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.

  Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.
› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely!

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

› For parking, look for a place with suitable ground.

  Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

› Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle!

› When handling the seats, releasing the parking brake, etc. injuries can occur.
› In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
› At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
› When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside.

  Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » *page 41*.

Different weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to operate the vehicle in your country?
› Is it necessary to take certain measures to ensure that the vehicle is fully functional?
› Is it necessary to take certain measures to avoid vehicle damage, e.g. B. changing the coolant, the 12-volt vehicle battery, high-voltage battery maintenance, etc.?

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.
› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
› This emergency service is only available in certain countries.
› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least three years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

› Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre simultaneously receives information such as the accident location and its severity, the number of passengers involved and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident – automatic call

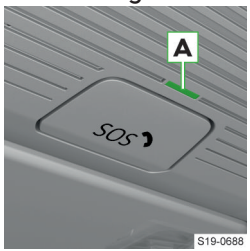
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency call line is also initiated when the Emergency Assist system intervenes.

Minor accident – call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light

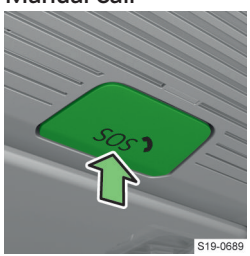


The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light A illuminates.

- Green – illuminated – the system is functional
- Green – flashing – a call is being made to the emergency call centre
- Red – illuminated – there is a system fault, seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Not illuminated – the system is out of order due to long–term unavailability of the mobile network. If this problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operation

Manual call



The emergency button is located below the cap with the icon SOS.

- To **open** the cap, press on it.
- To **close** the cap, press on it until it clicks into place.



- Press and hold the SOS button under the flap.
- Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
- To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

ⓘ Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Put on the reflective vest.
- Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- Report the accident to the emergency services and inform them that it concerns a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
- Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

ⓘ If the airbags or the belt tensioners trigger in the event of an accident, the high-voltage system is automatically deactivated at the same time.

Safety systems

After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

› Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
› Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn on the hazard warning lights.
› Put on the reflective vest.
› Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
› Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the fire to the emergency services and inform them that it concerns a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
› Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

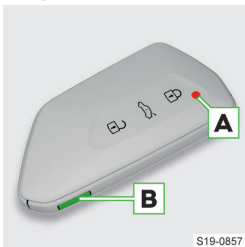
⚠ WARNING

› Do not try to extinguish the fire yourself.
› Do not stand close to the burning vehicle.

Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key overview



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked

A Battery status warning light

B Locking button for removing the key part

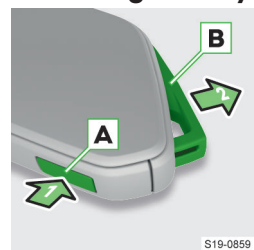
NOTICE

› Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.

› Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The key signal rage is approximately 30 m. The range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Removing the key bit



› Press securing tab A . The pendant part B of the key bit folds out.

› Press the securing tab A again.

› Remove the key bit.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

› After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

› A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.

› Replace the battery » page 40, Changing the key battery.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons:

› The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » page 40, Changing the key battery.

› The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows:

› Press any button on the key.

› Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » page 43.

If necessary, the key must be synchronized if a favoured button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

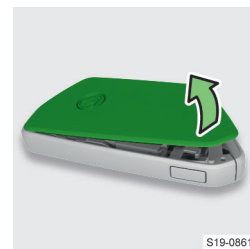
Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery

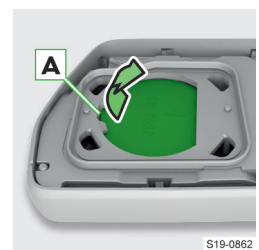


› Remove the key part and insert it partially into the slot.

› Push downwards against the top cover to release it.



› Open the battery cover.



› Insert a thin screwdriver into the A hole and remove the battery.

› Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.

› Insert the new battery.

› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

› Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.

› Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the vehicle key in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system simultaneously unlocks and locks all doors, the charging socket cover and the boot lid.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

The indicator light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the car.

The SAFE function is automatically activated when the car is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on the SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

› There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with the SAFE function activated.

Switching off the SAFE function

› Double command to lock within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring *» page 46, Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it goes out and after 30 seconds it flashes regularly at longer intervals.

If the SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

The SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking after starting

All doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the speed of 15 km/h is reached. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the symbol in the central locking button.

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

To unlock the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

- Open some of the doors from the inside.
- Press the central locking button
- Remove the key from the ignition (depending on vehicle equipment)

The vehicle will unlock automatically when the airbags are activated.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked automatically can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

- Key » page 39
- Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 44
- Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

- Press the button in the middle part of the dash panel.

  The symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks/unlocks all the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

- Select the MENU > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
- Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
- Select the item *Central locking*.

All doors

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the charging socket cover.

Single door

The button on the key can be used to unlock the driver's door and the charging socket cover.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the driver's door and the charging socket cover are unlocked by holding the driver's door handle. Holding any other handle unlocks all the doors, the boot lid and the charging socket cover.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

The button on the key can be used to unlock the driver's door and the charging socket cover.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the charging socket cover are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

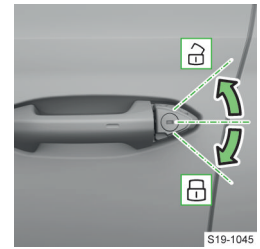
› The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.
› Then it lights up continuously.
› After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



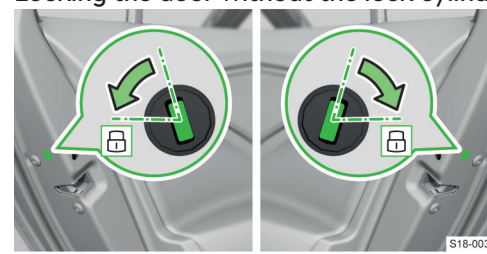
Removing the cover:
› Pull and hold the left front door handle.
› Insert the key part into the slot on the underside of the cover.
› Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Release the door handle.



Locking and unlocking:
› Insert the removed part into the lock cylinder with the fob on the **right** and unlock or lock the vehicle.

Fitting the cover:
› Pull the door handle and hold it.
› Replace the cover.
› Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



› Open the door.
› On a vehicle equipped with a slot cover, remove the cover.
› Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
› Turn the key or the flathead screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (sprung position).

Once closed, the door is locked.

Keyless locking

Usage

The keyless locking system (KESSY) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The door handle sensors are designed to be operated with the bare hand, e.g. a gloved hand may limit the function of the sensors.

ⓘ Also vehicles without keyless locking system have a dent in the door handle.

ⓘ If the door handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be limited.

Unlocking



› Hold the door handle.
› Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Automatic unlocking when the key is close to the vehicle

If the vehicle is equipped with this function, it will automatically unlock when the key is brought close to the vehicle.

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

ⓘ If individual doors or doors on one side of the vehicle are set to unlock, the vehicle will not unlock when the key is in the vicinity of the rear of the vehicle.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If you lock the key in the boot, you can still open the boot lid within 2 minutes.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the exterior door handle.

The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanent deactivation of keyless locking

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
› Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
› Select the *Central locking* > *Keyless Access*.

Activating/deactivating automatic unlocking when the key is in the vicinity of the vehicle

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
› Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
› Select the *Central locking* > *Unlock vehicle when approaching*.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.
› If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

When the ignition was switched on, no key was found



illuminates
Message that no key was found in the vehicle

› Insert the key into the vehicle.

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs:

› Opening the front flap
› Opening the boot lid
› Opening the door
› Manipulation of the ignition lock
› Towing the vehicle
› Movement in the vehicle
› Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system
› Uncoupling the trailer
› Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder
› Smash the rear window

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

ⓘ Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time:

› Interior monitoring
› Towing protection

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function **» page 41, *Functionality***.

Deactivation

› By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

› In the Infotainment system, in the menu: **MENU** > > > *Outside*
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .
› Select *Central locking* and deactivate the interior monitoring by moving the slider to the left.

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

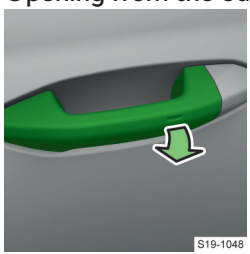
ⓘ After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

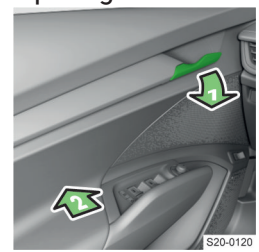
Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

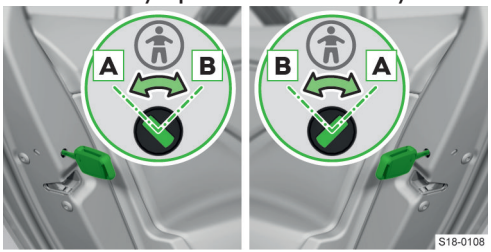
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child safety lock



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Electrically operated child safety lock



› Press the **left** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the child lock is switched on can be seen by the illuminated displayed in the button.

After switching on the child lock the electric window is also blocked in the respective door.

Window – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the glass being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

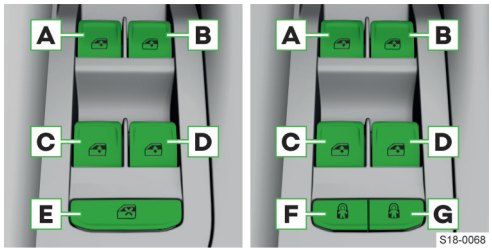
The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

- **A** Front left window
- **B** Front right window
- **C** Rear left window
- **D** Rear right window
- **E** Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors
- **F** Deactivation/activation of the key in the left rear door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) *» page 47, Operation*
- **G** Deactivation/activation of the key in the right back door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) *» page 47, Operation*

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Close all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system MENU > > > *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the window operation menu item.

› Select the menu item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window operation does not work after disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Enable window operation » ***page 50, Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery***.

Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery

Activate automatic window operation

› Turn on the ignition.

› Pull out the corresponding button and close the window.

› Release the button.

› Again pull out and hold the corresponding button for 1 s.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the tilt/slide sunroof, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If the operation is activated in the closed direction and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, the movement of the glass pane is stopped and the pane moves back a few centimetres.

If the obstacle is not removed, the force limit is disabled when you try to close again by moving and holding a finger in the closed direction (if the time span between the closing attempts is less than 5 s). The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

ⓘ NOTICE

› During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.

› Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery.

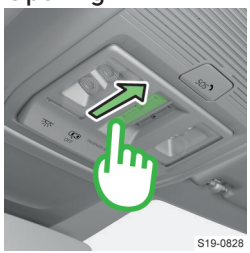
Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation

Opening



› Move backwards using your finger.

Closing



› Move forwards using your finger.

Stop/restore the movement of the sliding/tilting roof

› To **stop** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, press .

› To **restore** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, move your finger in the desired direction.

Open/slide back the sliding/tilting roof

› To **open** or **slide back** the sliding/tilting roof, press .

After switching off the ignition, the sliding / tilting roof can be operated for about 10 minutes as long as none of the doors are opened.

Comfort operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof

The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

› Press and hold the button to **turn it off**.

› Press and hold the button to **close** it.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to **close** the sliding/tilting roof via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door *» page 44*.

Sun visors – with electrical operation

Operation

Opening



› Move backwards using your finger.

Closing



› Move forwards using your finger.

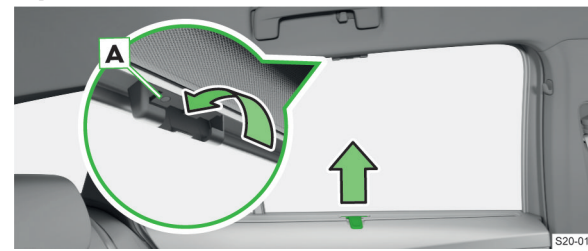
Stop/restore the movement of the roller blind

› To **stop** the movement of the roller blind, press .

› To **restore** the movement of the roller blind, move your finger in the desired direction.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

Operation



Brightness protection

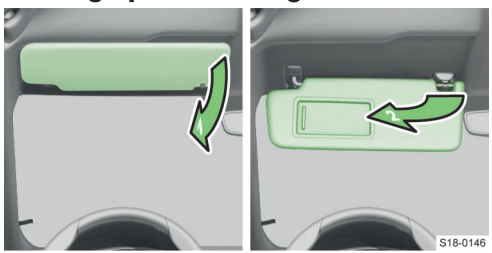
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen

2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.

In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

Unlocking



› To unlock the lid, hold the button.

If no door is opened within 120 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

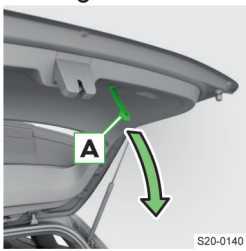
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Hold the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid – with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.

› Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

› If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

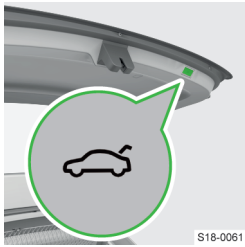
The lid handle



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

The button in the lid



› Press the button to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The button in the door



› To open the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid starts to open.

› To close the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid is fully closed.

› Pull or release the button to stop the lid from moving.

The button on the key



› Hold the button to open or close the lid, or to stop its movement.

Closing applies only to vehicles with keyless locking system. The key must not be in the car and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the lid.

The lid can also be closed by briefly pulling the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the tailgate in the desired position.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate

› Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » *page 57*.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

NOTICE

› Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

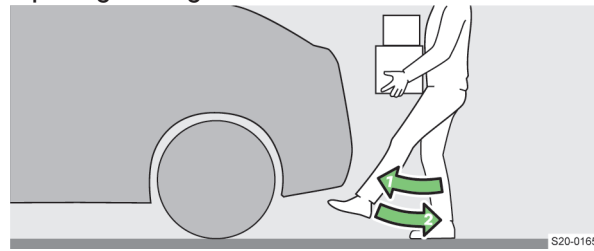
Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ You have the vehicle key with you.
- ✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



› Stand in the middle behind the bumper.
› Move one foot quickly under the bumper and remove it again.

If the lid doesn't move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swing motion.

Display of the opening / closing process

The rear turn signal lights come on when the flap is opened and closed. When you close the lid, audible signals are sounded.

Stopping/ restoring lid movement

The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging motion with your foot. Lid movement is restored by a subsequent swinging motion with your foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Downpour
› Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› Select the MENU > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.

› Select the screen with the *Easy Open* item by swiping with your finger.

› Select the *Easy Open* item.

It is recommended to deactivate the feature in the following cases:

› Installing the roof rack

› Connecting a trailer or other accessories to the towing bracket

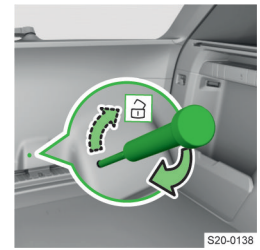
› Washing the vehicle

› Maintenance and repairs to the rear of the vehicle

Unlocking the boot lid

Release

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.



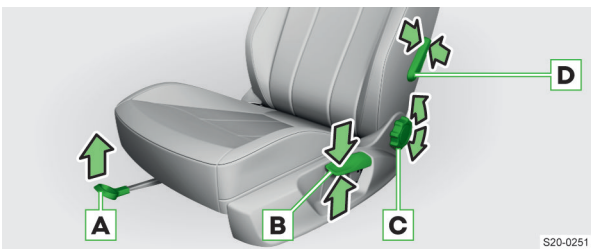
› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.

› Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

Front seat – with manual operation

Controls on the seat



A Adjust in a longitudinal direction
After releasing the control lever the latch must engage audibly.

B Adjusting the height

C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment

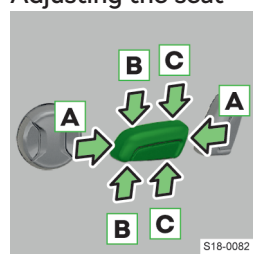
D Adjusting the lumbar support Set the extent of the curvature

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Front seat – with electrical operation

Controls on the seat

Adjusting the seat

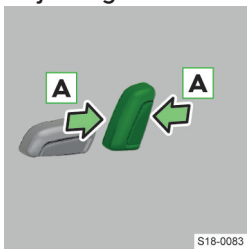


A Adjust in a longitudinal direction

B Adjust the inclination

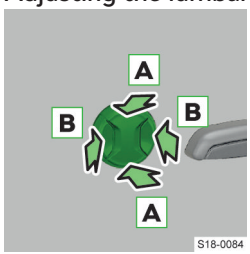
C Adjusting the height

Adjusting the seat back



A Adjust the inclination

Adjusting the lumbar support



A Set the position of the curvature

B Set the extent of the curvature

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Driver's seat – convenience entry function

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle can have a convenience entry function.

When the driver's door is opened, the seat moves into a position that enables easy entry.

The seat moves back to the saved position as soon as the door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

The seat moves to a position that allows easy exit as soon as the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Retrieve stored position

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.

› In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

Stop position change

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

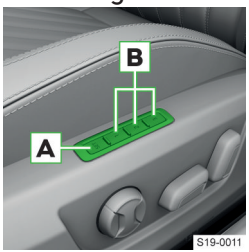
Or:

› Press the button on the key.

› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



- Turn on the ignition.
- Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
- Press the button A and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons B.

Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

ⓘ The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Save front passenger seat position

Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing

- Turn on the ignition.
- In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
- By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror* .
- Select *Mirror* and activate the mirror's fold function.
- Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
- Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

ⓘ When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Driver's seat – convenience entry function

The function is activated in the Infotainment system in the menu **MENU** > > > *Interior* > *Seats*.

Seat massage function

Turn on/turn off



- Press the button.

Function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

- Only switch the function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.

Rear seats

Folding down the seat backs

Before folding down

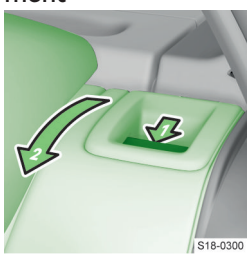
› Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
› Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.
› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts!

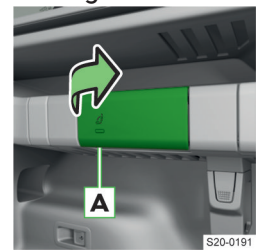
› The seat belts must not be fastened when handling the backrests.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

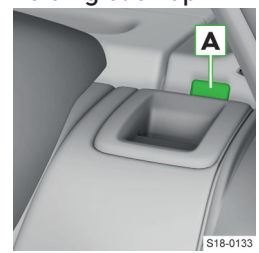
Folding forwards from the boot



› On the lever in the area A. pull.

The seat back is unlocked and partly folded forwards.

Folding back up



› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
› Fold the seat backrest back up.

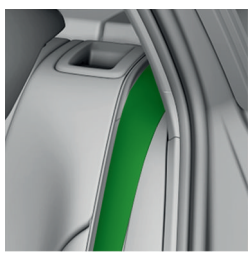
The release handle must audibly click into place.

› Check that the seat backrest has locked in place. The pin A must not be visible.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment



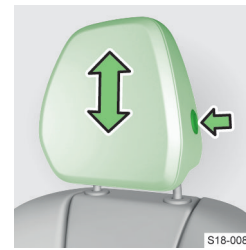
Park position of rear seat belts



Headrests

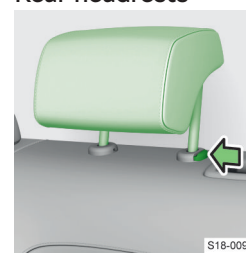
HeadrestsAdjusting the height

Front headrests



› Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Folding side bolsters on the rear headrest

The folded down side bolsters reduce uncontrolled sideways head movement , e.g. when sleeping.

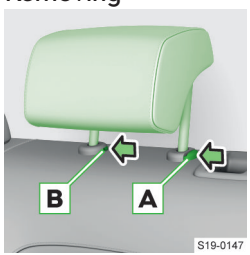
› Adjust the headrest to the initial pulled out position.



› Fold down the side bolsters on the head rest.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



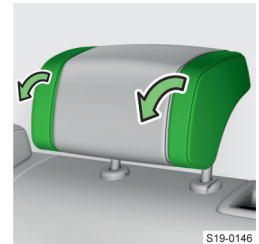
› Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
› Move the headrest up to the stop.
› Press safety buttons A and B at the same time and remove the support.

Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the seat backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

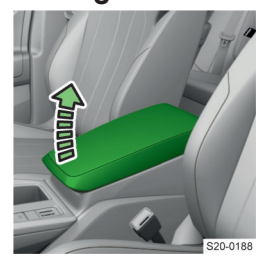
Sleep package



The package includes folding side bolsters for the headrest and a bag with a blanket.

Front armrest

Settings



Adjusting the height
› Raise the backrest to one of the locked positions.

Folding down
› Raise the backrest beyond the highest locked position and fold it down again.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the central airbag!
› The front armrest must be folded down or raised in one of the locking positions while driving.

Rear armrest

Settings



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Load-through device

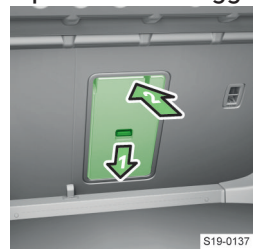
Open and close

Open from the passenger compartment



› Press the lid in the upper area and pull on the handle.
› Open the lid.

Open from the luggage compartment



› Press the store button.
› Open the lid.

Closing

› Fold back the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks into place.

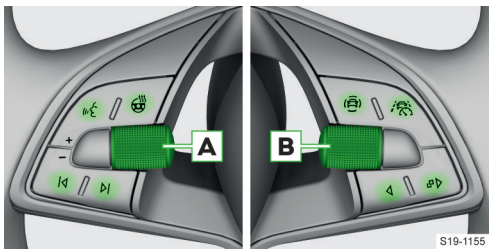
After closing, the red mark on the back of the cover above the safety button must not be visible.

⚠ WARNING

› The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis in a secured through-loading bag.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multi-function steering wheel



Switch voice control on/off

Steering wheel heating » page 109

A **Turning** – adjusting the volume
Pressing – switching the sound on/off

Switch to the next track/station played

Switch to the previous track/station played

Switching some assist systems

Switching between Travel Assist and ACC » page 212

B **Turning** – selecting from items in the assist systems menu under the button
Pressing – confirming an item in the assist systems menu

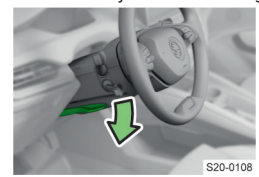
The and are used for controlling the digital cockpit » page 111.

Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light If the warning light does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

flashes
Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
› If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

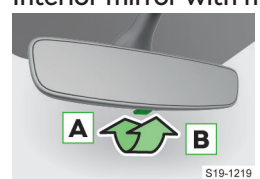
Video - Multifunction steering wheel

Multifunction steering wheel – operation
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-multifunction-steering-wheel

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened
B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.

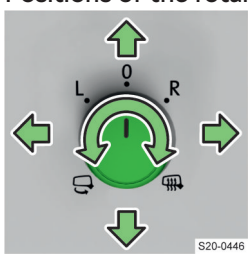
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Wing mirror

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the rotary knob



- **L** Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
- **0** Switch off operation
- **R** Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
- Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position of the rotary knob)
- Heat the mirror with the ignition on

Adjusting the mirror surface

› Select position **L** or **R**.

› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

ⓘ Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

If this function is activated, the mirror surface of the passenger mirror is also set when the mirror surface of the driver's mirror is set.

Mirror with memory function

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting for the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the memory of the driver's seat **» page 60**.

Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat **» page 60** stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.
- ✓ The mirror position is saved.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ The adjustment knob is in the **R** position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of mirror damage!
› If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces as well as the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing are carried out as follows:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror* .
› Select *Mirror* and perform activation or deactivation.

Troubleshooting

Electrical operation of the mirror surfaces disturbed

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns!
› Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Usage

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
› If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
› If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
› Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
› Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

› If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety of the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners.

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Lights up or flashes – a front or rear seat belt is not fastened

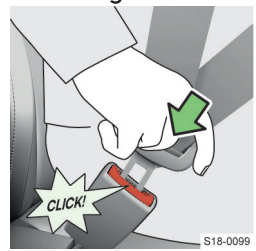
lights up – rear seat not occupied

Flashes – a rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



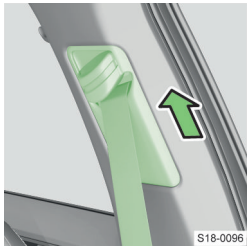
- Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

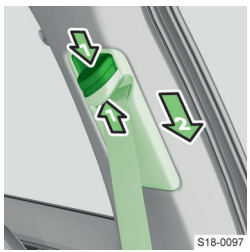


- Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



› Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



› Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.

› After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



› Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.

› Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.

› Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.

› If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.

› If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

- When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.
- For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

- Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



A Sticker on the passenger sun visor

B Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

› It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » page 82.

› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.

› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and a child seat that could be placed behind it.

› Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

› For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.

› Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

› As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles, are approved for these vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range, please contact your ŠKODA Partner or visit the ŠKODA website.

For optimal protection, it is recommended to use the child car seat of Group 2-3 with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child car seat is equipped with it.

Classification by weight groups

Child seats are divided into groups in accordance with the ECE-R 44 regulation.

Category	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9–18 kg

Category	Weight of the child
2	15–25 kg
3	22–36 kg

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of applicability of child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 regulation:

Child seats that use the ISOFIX system

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag [b]	Without activated front airbag [b]
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IUF	IL
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IUF	IL

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

Category	Size category of child seat [a)]	Rear seats	
		Outer seats [b)]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	IL	X
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IL	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IL	X

a) The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

b) The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

"IL" The seat is suitable for ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

"IUF" The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight group.

"X" The seat is not equipped with ISOFIX system eyelets.

i-Size

Passenger seat		Rear seats	
With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

“i-UF” The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“i-U”The seat is suitable for forward-facing and rear-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“X” The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Category	Passenger seat	
	With activated front airbag [a)]	Without activated front airbag [a)]
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U
1 (9–18 kg)	UF	U
2 (15–25 kg)	UF	U
3 (22–36 kg)	UF	U

[a)] Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

Category	Rear seats	
	Outer seats	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	U	U
1 (9–18 kg)	U	U
2 (15–25 kg)	U	U
3 (22–36 kg)	U	U

“U” The seat is suitable for child seats in the “Universal” category permitted for use in this weight group.

“UF” The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal” category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

“X” The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter *» page 71, What you should be mindful of*.

ISOFIX

⚠ WARNING

› Do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects to the mounting eyelets used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided.

⚿ A child seat that uses the ISOFIX can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner or from a list of vehicles included with the child seat.

The ISOFIX system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats, or on the passenger seat.



› Remove the protective caps before fitting the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats that use the TOP TETHER system should only be used on those seats that are fitted with holding eyelets bearing the TOP TETHER symbol.

› Only attach one fastening strap on the child seat to the holding eyelet in the TOP TETHER system.

› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object must be attached to the TOP TETHER system holding eyelet.

The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.



Mounting eyelets on the rear seats



Mounting eyelets on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER belt mounting eyelets are located on the outer rear seats **A**, or on the passenger seat.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

What you should be mindful of

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » *page 82, Operation*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

› Maintain the correct seating position.

› Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

› No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » *page 81*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the front airbags!

› Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

› Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.

› Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.

› Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ ŠKODA AUTO recommends seat covers from the product range of ŠKODA original accessories.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the central airbag!

› The front armrest must be folded down or raised in one of the locking positions while driving.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

ⓘ As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed:

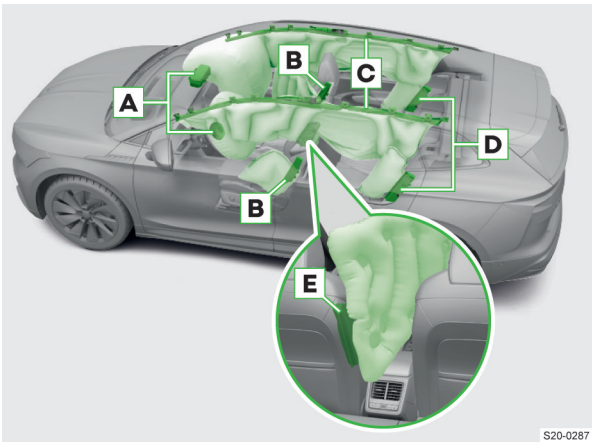
› Minor frontal and side collisions

› Rear-end collision

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering **AIRBAG**.



- **A** Front airbags
- **B** Side airbags - front
- **C** Head airbags
- **D** Side airbags - rear
- **E** Central airbag between the driver and front passenger seats

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on for airbag deployment.

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

It is recommended that airbags other than the front passenger airbag *» page 82, Operation* should be deactivated by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in the following cases:

› With the driver's seat correctly adjusted, a distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the breastbone cannot be maintained.

› Additional operating controls for disabled drivers are installed in the vehicle.

› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on, and then flashes for 12 seconds – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated when the vehicle is sold, inform the buyer!

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty

illuminates
Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Use

The passenger front airbag can be deactivated e.g. in the following situations:

› A child seat is fitted on the front passenger seat and the child is transported rear-facing.
› The minimum distance from the dashboard cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!
› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

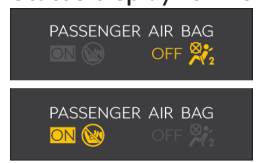
⚠ WARNING

Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!
› After switching off the passenger airbag with the key bit, do not leave the key bit inserted in the key switch while driving.

Shocks can cause the Key assignment to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Status display for front passenger airbag



Indicator lights in the headliner

› After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
› If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
› One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch:

OFF — Illuminates – front passenger airbag switched off

ON — Illuminates 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag

› Remove the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off



- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the passenger door.
- Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
- To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.
- To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
- Remove the key bit from the slot.
- Close the passenger door.

- Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with OFF
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

- Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

When no light is switched on

The control light ☼ may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

illuminates

› Switch on the light.

Operation

Light modes



The switch ☼ can be used to select the light mode.

ⓘ The range of available light modes varies according to the ambient light conditions and vehicle operation (standing/driving).

ⓘ Information on the selected mode is briefly displayed on the instrument cluster display.

› Press the ☼ switch repeatedly to select the desired mode.

AUTO – Automatic mode

› Switching parking lights and low beam on/off automatically » page 86.

› Switching daytime running lights on/off automatically » page 86.

AUTO Illuminates in the light switch. f the low beam is also switched on automatically, illuminates in the light switch.

– **Parking lights mode**

illuminates in the light switch.

– **Low beam mode**

illuminates in the light switch.

OFF – **Lights off**

No green indicator light illuminates in the light switch.

When the ignition is switched on, the **AUTO** mode is automatically set.

The parking lights can only be switched on and off when the vehicle is stationary or moving at a speed up to 10 km/h up to the distance of 100 m. If either value is exceeded, the driving lights are automatically switched on.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .

› Select *Headlights* .

› Select the menu item for headlight range control.

› Adjust the headlight range using the slider. The headlight range must correspond to the vehicle's load.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot empty

4 All seats occupied, boot loaded

6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can be used.

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

In dynamic cornering light, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.
› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Adjust headlights for driving in right / left-hand traffic

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .

› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Travel mode:* .

Troubleshooting

Defective light bulb or LED light source


illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears on the display indicating a lighting fault.

› Replace the defective bulb.
› In case of a defective LED light source, contact a specialist garage for assistance.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Moisture can precipitate in the interior of the headlights under certain weather conditions (cold/humid) or after washing the car. This is not a fault. Neither the performance nor the life of the headlamps is adversely affected. When driving with the lights on, the precipitated moisture will gradually evaporate.

Malfunction in the automatic headlight control

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened considerably

Headlight defective.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective

If a message indicating a driving lights failure appears, the light will work in emergency mode.

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Daylight running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

ⓘ For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Automatic on / off

The light is automatically switched on or off according to the given lighting conditions and vehicle operation (standstill/travel).

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

Automatic driving lights function

Functionality

Switching the light on automatically in low-light

The low beam and parking light is automatically switched on or off according to the given lighting conditions and vehicle operation (standstill/travel).

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching low beam on/off automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

✓ The function is activated.

✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic driving lights functions are set in the Infotainment system.

› The menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

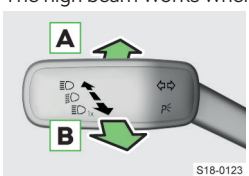
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .

› Select *Headlights* Select and set the desired functions.

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam works when the low beam is on.



A Switch on high beam

B Switch off main beam / switch on headlight flasher

When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster .

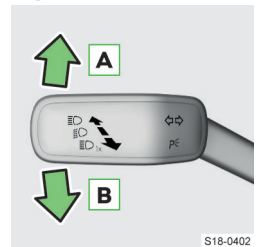
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Switching on the turn signal light on the right – a light flashes in the instrument cluster

B Switching on the turn signal light on the left – a light flashes in the instrument cluster

Turn signal - convenience signalling

Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights*.
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Comfort flasher*.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

› Check the turn signal light on the right.

flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

› Check the turn signal light on the left.

Trailer flashing light failed

does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

› Check the trailer lighting.

Lights for bad weather

Usage

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The bad weather light represents one of the light modes, provides better illumination of the road in unfavourable visibility conditions where the standard light loses its effectiveness.

Operation

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.



› Press the button for bad weather lights.

is illuminated in the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

The light is automatically switched on when the following conditions are met:

✓ Low beam is switched on.
✓ Driving speed is up to 120 km/h.

Rear fog light

Operation



› Press the rear fog light button.

is illuminated in the instrument cluster and information on the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the button to switch on or off ⚠ in the middle part of the control panel.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking light function

Usage

Double-sided parking light

The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

One-sided parking light

The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.

Operation

Double-sided parking light

› Turn on the ignition.

› Choose light mode.

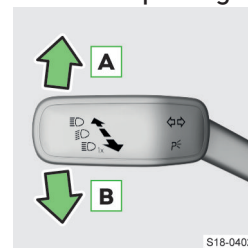
› Switch off the ignition.

› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

The light may switch off automatically if the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12 volt vehicle battery may be discharged.

One-sided parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right

B Switch on the sidelights on the left

› Switch off the ignition.

› Move the lever to the appropriate position.

› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Adaptive functions of the headlights

Usage

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The dynamic cornering lights ensure the best possible illumination of the road, depending on the respective driving situation.

The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

Settings

Activate / deactivate the dynamic cornering lights function

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside*.
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Dynamic cornering light* .

Function COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

ⓘ For vehicles with KESSY headlights and keyless locking system (KESSY) with activated automatic unlocking function, the lights are switched on automatically when the key is approached.

Operating conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.
✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

Settings

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
› Select the screen with the *Comfort lights* item by swiping with your finger.
› Select the *Comfort lights* item and set the function.

ⓘ When the engine is switched off, a menu appears on the Infotainment system screen where the COMING HOME feature can be activated/deactivated.

High-beam assist system Light Assist

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

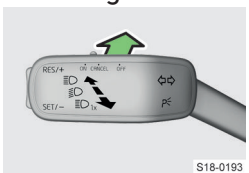
Risk of accident!
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



S18-0193

› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

› The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.
› The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning.

The system function can be restricted in unfavorable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Light Assist* .

Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist

Functionality

The headlight assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam is switched on, it adjusts the light cone so that the drivers of oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

When driving on the motorway at night, it blinds the light cone on the side of the dividing strip, so that the drivers in the vehicles coming from the opposite side are not blinded. These vehicles may not be recognized by the assistant, because their headlights may be covered by the dividing strip.

The assistant also ensures better illumination of the curve area.

⚠ WARNING

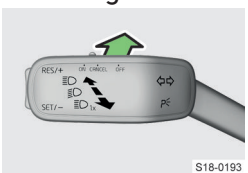
Risk of accident!
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

› The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

› The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning. The system can also recognize a vehicle as a single-lane means of transport.

The system function can be restricted in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu **MENU** > > > *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .

› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Dynamic Light Assist*.

Replace light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

The replacement of the following bulbs is possible. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must conform to the specification of the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on the bulb socket.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of headlight damage due to the ingress of water and dirt!

› Always fit the protective cap on the headlight correctly after changing a bulb.

Conditions for changing a bulb

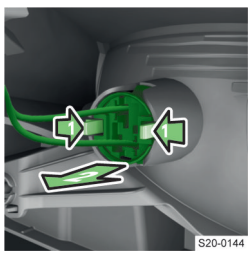
- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Light switched off

Front turn signal

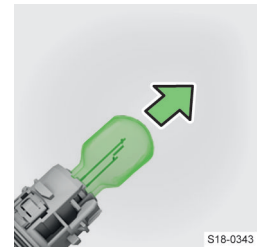


Left headlight - LED

› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.



› Press the locking lugs and remove the base with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the bulb into the headlight until the locking lugs engage.
› Fit the protective cap on the headlight again.

Interior lighting

Operation

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked
› One of the doors is open
› Switching ignition off

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked
› The ignition is switched on
› About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

ⓘ If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Lighting operation

Front and rear lights on/off

OFF Deactivating automatic switch-on
(OFF lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the respective light.

You can adjust the intensity of the light by holding your finger on it. The set intensity is not stored in the memory when the light is switched off.

Automatic switching the footwell lighting on/off

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

It also switches on automatically when the doors are opened, e.g. when getting in or out of the vehicle.

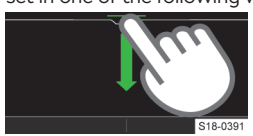
Switching on the make-up mirror illumination in the windscreen sun visors

› Slide off the make-up mirror cover.

Settings

Backlighting of the switches and instruments

The intensity of backlighting of switches and instruments can be set in one of the following ways:



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and swipe down with your finger.

A window will open with a slider for setting the backlight intensity.

› Use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Or:

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Interior* menu.

› Select the item for interior lighting and use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Footwell illumination

Applies to vehicles without background lighting.

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.

› Select the screen with the item for interior lighting by swiping with your finger sideways.

› Select the item for interior lighting and use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

On vehicles equipped with background lighting, the footwell lighting is part of the interior background lighting ***» page 95, Settings***.

Interior background lighting

Use

The background lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere inside the vehicle.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

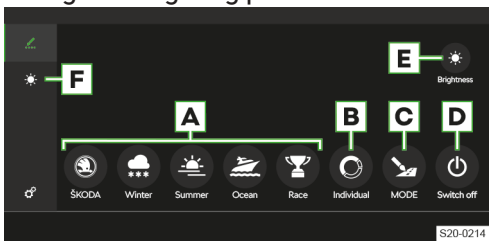
The lighting is also switched on automatically after the door is opened.

When the vehicle is locked, the lights will briefly turn red. When the vehicle is unlocked, the illumination will briefly turn green. When certain doors are opened, the illumination in these doors will turn red to indicate that the door is open.

Settings

You can set the background lighting in the Infotainment system menu **MENU** > ☀.

Background lighting presets



A Factory presets
› You can only set the overall lighting intensity.

B User preset ◯
› Set the lighting colour for the dashboard and door area together and the central console independently. The footwell lighting colour is white only.
› Set the lighting intensity independently for the dashboard area, the door area, the centre console area, and the footwell area.

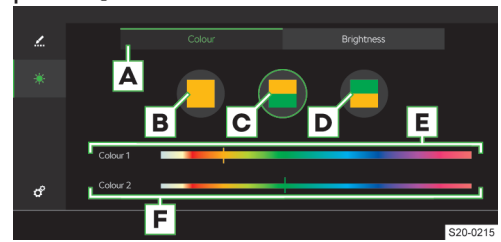
C Automatic preset ↘
› The colour and brightness of the lighting automatically change depending on the selected travel mode of the car.

D Switching off the lighting

E Adjusting the overall lighting intensity

F Setting the colours and intensity of the lighting for the user preset ◯

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset ◯



A Tab for setting the lighting colours

B Selection for uniform lighting colour
› Use the **E** slider to set the colour.

C Option for two-colour lighting
› Use the **E** slider to set the colour for the dashboard and door area.
› Set the colour for the footwell using the **F** slider.

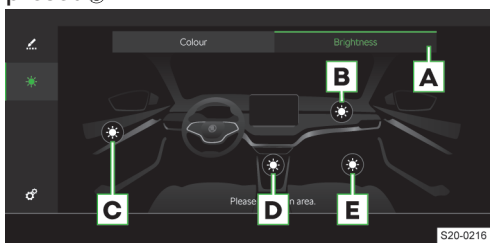
D Option for two-colour lighting
› The colour for the dashboard and door area will be interchanged with the colour for the central column.

E Slider for setting the lighting colours

F Slider for setting the lighting colours

Set-up procedure
› Select the user preset ◌.
› Select the tab for setting the lighting colours.
› Choose whether you want a uniform lighting colour or a different colour for the dashboard and door area and a different colour for the central column area.
› Use the sliders to set the desired lighting colour.

Setting the brightness of the lighting for the user preset ◌



A The tab for setting the lighting intensity.
B Setting the lighting intensity for the dashboard area.
C Setting the lighting intensity for the door area.
D Setting the lighting intensity for the central column area.
E Setting the lighting intensity for the footwell.

Set-up procedure
› Select the user preset ◌.
› Select the tab for setting the lighting intensity.
› Select the area, for which you want to set the lighting intensity.
› Use the sliders to set the desired lighting intensity.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Operating conditions

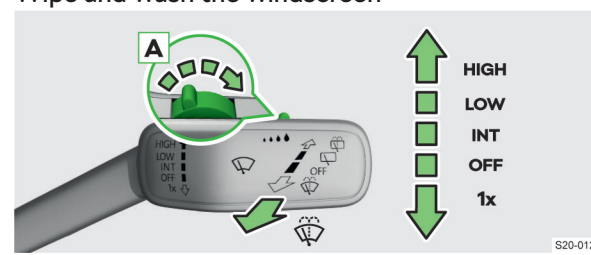
✓ Front flap closed
✓ Boot lid closed
✓ Ignition on

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping
LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- › Intermittent wiping
- › Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically.

If the driver or front passenger door is opened while the vehicle is stationary with the windscreen wipers switched on, the wiping process is interrupted. If the door is closed within a few seconds and the windscreen wiper lever is moved, the wiping process will continue.

Clean headlights

When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Spring-loaded position:
- › Washing and wiping the windscreen
- › Cleaning the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping function

If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain are activated or deactivated as follows:

› The menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Wiping* .
› Select *Wiping* .
› Activate or deactivate the functions.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!
› When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ NOTICE

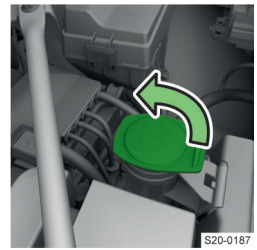
Risk of damage to the headlights!
› Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to parts in the area under the front flap!
› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the area under the front flap » page 21.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 6 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.



› Open the front flap » page 255.
› Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
› Close the sealing cap of the tank.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

For folding down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must first adjust the wiper arms to the folded position.

ⓘ NOTICE

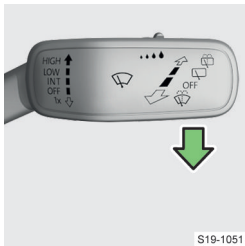
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the front flap!

› Close the front flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position – using the operating lever

› Switch the ignition on and off again.



› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position – using the Infotainment system

› The menu **MENU** > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Wiping* .

› Select *Wiping* and then select the service position of the windscreen wiper arms.

🛈 After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed for some time on the Infotainment screen, showing where the windscreen wiper arms can be set to folding position.

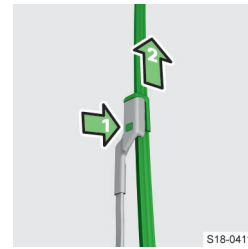
Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.

› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Heating and air conditioning system

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

› We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 ° C lower than the outdoor temperature.
› We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!
› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Functionality

Smart and classic air conditioning

Smart air conditioning is an automatic mode with preset selection options.

The classic air conditioning system enables the individual functions to be set.

Automatic mode

Automatic mode keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Air Care

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is started/switched off by tapping on the function surface ≈ › *Air Care* in the operating menu of the air conditioning system.

When the Air Care function surface turns green, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

When the Air Care function surface turns white, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

After the function is switched off, the function surface *Air Care* lights up green for a certain time.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

- ✓ Outside temperature above 2 ° C
- ✓ Fan switched on
- ✓ Ignition on

Or:

Occupied driver's seat

Operation

Menu for operating the air conditioning

› Press CLIMA under Infotainment.

The following menu is displayed:

- Display smart air conditioning with pre-determined pre-set options
- Show classic settings for the air conditioning
- Air Care
- Further settings for air conditioning

After it is switched on, the air conditioning is started according to the settings, before it is switched off.

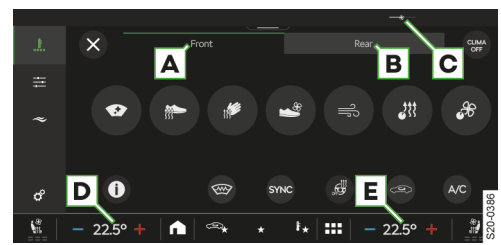
Settings

Setting up smart air conditioning

› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment › on the Infotainment system display.

Depending on vehicle equipment, a menu with some of the following functions will appear:

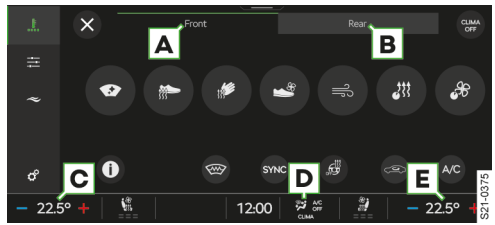
13" Infotainment system:



- A Displaying the settings on the front
- B Rear settings display

- C Overview of currently selected functions
- D Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- E Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- Information on smart air conditioning
- CLIMA OFF Switching the air conditioning on/off
- Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 107, Operation
- Switching the steering wheel heating on/off » page 109, Operation
- Windscreen defogging preset
- Warm air flow to footwell preset
- Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating
- Cold air flow to the footwell preset
- Outdoor air flow to interior preset
- Short-term heating power boost preset
- Short-term cooling power boost preset
- SYNC Switching on/off maintaining the interior temperature based on the driver's temperature setting
- Switching the recirculated air mode on/off
- A/C Switching the cooling system on/off
- Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off » page 108

10" Infotainment system:



- A Displaying the settings on the front
- B Rear settings display
- C Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- D Overview of currently selected functions
- E Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- Information on smart air conditioning
- CLIMA OFF Switching the air conditioning on/off
- Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 107, Operation
- Switching the steering wheel heating on/off » page 109, Operation
- Windscreen defogging preset
- Warm air flow to footwell preset
- Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating
- Cold air flow to the footwell preset
- Outdoor air flow to interior preset

Short-term heating power boost preset

Short-term cooling power boost preset

SYNC Switching on/off maintaining the interior temperature based on the driver's temperature setting

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off » *page 108*

To start the preselect option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

Switching off the preset also switches off the steering wheel heating. This applies even if the steering wheel heater was manually switched on before the preset was activated.

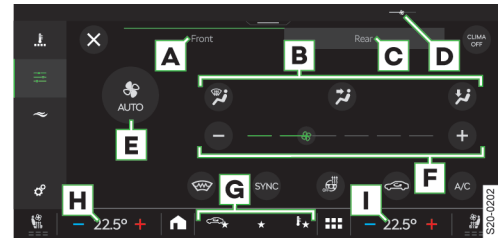
The selected preset is switched on for a limited period of time.

Setting up classic air conditioning

› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:

13" Infotainment system:



A Displaying the settings on the front

B Setting the direction of the air outlet

C Rear settings display

D Overview of currently selected functions

E Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power

F Setting the fan speed

G Option to set Climatronic to your favourite functions » *page 118, Operation*

H Temperature setting for the left-hand side

I Temperature setting for the right-hand side

CLIMA OFF Switching the Climatronic system on/off

Switching the windscreen heating on/off » *page 107, Operation*

SYNC Switching maintaining the interior temperature on/off based on the driver's temperature setting

Switching the steering wheel heating on/off *» page 109, Operation*

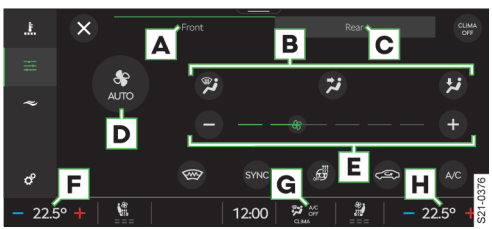
Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off *» page 108*

REAR Locking the rear seat heating intensity increase and rear temperature setting *» page 109, Settings*
The function is displayed when you press the **C** button.

10" Infotainment system:



A Displaying the settings on the front

B Setting the direction of the air outlet

C Rear settings display

D Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power

E Setting the fan speed

F Temperature setting for the left-hand side

G Overview of currently selected functions

H Temperature setting for the right-hand side

CLIMA OFF Switching the Climatronic system on/off

Switching the windscreen heating on/off *» page 107, Operation*

SYNC Switching maintaining the interior temperature on/off based on the driver's temperature setting

Switching the steering wheel heating on/off *» page 109, Operation*

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off *» page 108*

REAR Locking the rear seat heating intensity increase and rear temperature setting *» page 109, Settings*
The function is displayed when you press the **C** button.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the Infotainment display:

LOW Maximum cooling power

HIGH Maximum heating power

Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the display at the back of the centre console.

Air conditioning system can also be set in the MyŠKODA application *» page 173, Functionality*.

Setting the temperature on the touch panel below the Infotainment system

› Adjust the temperature on the driver's side by swiping two fingers on the touch panel.

› To set the temperature on the passenger side, first tap the touch bar twice with two fingers and then swipe two fingers to set the temperature.

Other settings for Climatronic

› Tap the button in the air conditioning control menu.

The following menu will appear:

› *Automatic recirculation* – switching the automatic air recirculation on/off

Activating/deactivating the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Automatic switching on of seat heating and ventilation

› Automatic switching on of the steering wheel heating

If this function is activated, the heating/ventilation will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on, depending on the temperature of the seats or steering wheel and the temperature inside and outside the vehicle.

Climatronic economy mode

If a seat is not occupied, Climatronic will adjust the air temperature for that seat to reduce energy consumption.

The Infotainment system display shows Eco.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic deactivation of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

High concentration of CO_2

illuminated

High CO_2 concentration report

⚠ DANGER

Risk of accident!

High CO_2 concentrations cause sudden loss of consciousness and suffocation.

› Open all windows immediately!

› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

High concentration of CO_2

illuminated

High CO_2 concentration report

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Increased CO_2 concentrations can cause nausea, fatigue and loss of attention for the driver and passengers.

› Open all windows!

› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

If the sensor detects an increased or high concentration of CO_2 in the interior of the vehicle:

› The fan speed is automatically increased.
› In a vehicle with the ignition switched off, the fan will automatically switch on

Fault in the CO_2 concentration sensor.

☼ illuminated

Report *Air conditioning is not working properly. Seek a specialist garage.*

› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system – setting ***https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-3zone-air-conditioning***

Stand-by air conditioning

Usage

With stand-by air-conditioning, the vehicle interior is cooled, ventilated or heated when stationary according to the desired temperature set for the time of departure.

Functionality

Sources for operating the stand-by air conditioning

› Power for high-voltage battery
› Power for charging station or mains socket

Operating using power of high-voltage battery

In order to minimise the discharge of the high-voltage battery, the air-conditioning time is shorter than when operating with electricity from the charging station or the mains socket.

Use with power from the charging station or wall outlet

When charging with alternating current (AC), the high-voltage battery is charged first, and then the air conditioning starts.

When charging with direct current (DC), the vehicle is air-conditioned during the charging process. When the charging process is complete, the air conditioning process is ended or continued with power from the high-voltage battery.

Operation

Menu for operating the stationary air conditioning

› Select the **MENU** > menu in infotainment.

The following menu is displayed:

- Display of the auxiliary air conditioning with preset options, with the option for temperature setting as well as for setting the air conditioning of the seats and the window heating
- Setting the departure time » *page 107*
- Further settings for stationary air conditioning

Switching on automatically
The stand-by air conditioning system switches on automatically depending on the departure time that is set and activated.

Automatic switch off
The stand-by air conditioning switches off automatically when one of the following events occurs:

› Upon reaching the desired temperature and departure time
› Low state of charge of the high-voltage battery

Setting the departure time
› Tap on .
› Select one of the pre-set options for setting the departure time.

In the displayed pre-selection option, you can use the functional surface ▶ to set or switch on following menu items:

› Departure time
› Weekday(s)
› Repeat for the selected weekday(s)
› Activate/deactivate the selected preselection option.

Heated windscreen

Usage
Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Requirements
✓ Ignition on
✓ Outside temperature approximately below 35 ° C

Operation

Heated rear window
› Press the REAR button under the Infotainment.

Heated windscreen
› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment.
› Tap on function surface > *Front* > in the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If ignition is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Mode for ventilation/defrosting of windscreen
› Press the MAX button under the Infotainment.

Settings

Automatic windscreen heating
The windscreen heater will automatically switch on if there is a risk of the windscreen fogging up.

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment display.
› Select the item for automatic windscreen heating

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes
The heating does not work as the battery charging level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  › The seat is not occupied.
  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

✓ Ignition on

Or:

Occupied driver's seat

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the front seats can be heated or heated and ventilated. The outer rear seats can only be heated.

Models without seat ventilation

› Tap the or function surface in the Infotainment screen to turn on front seat heating.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The output level of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the button or in the Infotainment screen.

Models with seat ventilation

› Tap the or function surface in the Infotainment screen to turn on front seat heating.

A menu is displayed for operating the front seat heater and ventilation.

› Adjust the heating output/ventilation level.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Display heating output/ventilation level in the button

--- Seat heating switched on

--- Seat ventilation switched on

If the engine is switched off with the heating/ventilation switched on and then started again within approximately 10 minutes, the heating/ventilation will continue according to the setting before the engine was switched off.

Settings

Blocking the increase in rear seat heating intensity

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment > ⚙ > *At the back* > REAR / REAR on the Infotainment system display.

If the function is switched on, the heating intensity can only be reduced.

ⓘ The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Heated steering wheel

Requirements

✓ Ignition on

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment.

› Tap on function surface ⚙ > *Front* > in the Infotainment screen.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Driver information system

Digital cockpit

Overview



A Display area with selected information:
- Time
- Indicator lights
- Reports and information
- Outside temperature

❄ – low outside temperature

B Display area for assistance systems

C Display area for driving data/navigation

D Display area with selected information:
- Speed
- Indicator lights
- Set level of recuperation
- Set mode of automatic transmission selector
- High-voltage battery charge status
- Range » page 232
- Driving performance availability indicator » page 233

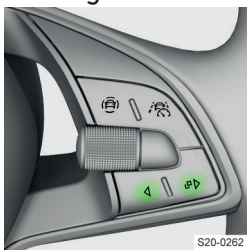
When you move the selector lever, the display shows a diagram and an instruction to select the automatic transmission mode.

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
- When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.
- Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
- Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.
- Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Operation

Overview of buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



◁ Switching/expanding the assist systems display area on the left-hand side of the display

To return to the default display, press ▷.

▷ Switching/expanding the driving data and navigation display area on the right-hand side of the display

To return to the default display, press ◁.

Settings

Setting the language

You can set the language in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the time

You can also set the time in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

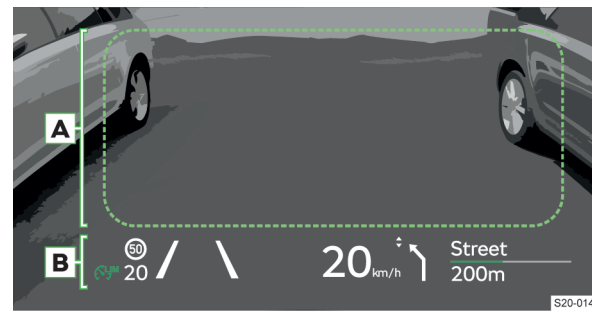
When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the following menu of the Infotainment system:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*

Head-up display with augmented reality

Functionality

The head-up display projects selected information onto the windscreen into the driver's field of vision.



A Display area with information that is projected directly onto objects in the driver's field of vision

Information from assistance systems and navigation is projected.

B Display area with selected information regarding speed, navigation and assistance systems

Restriction

The function may, for example, be restricted or unavailable due to strong sunlight.

ⓘ Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

Settings

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Interior* menu in the Infotainment system.

› Select the screen with the *Head-up Display* by swiping with your finger.

› Select the *Head-up Display*.

The following items can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Deactivating/activating the Head-up display
› Activating/deactivating the parts of display with information projected directly onto objects in the driver's field of view
› Position
› Brightness
› Colour scheme
› Selecting the projected information

Video – Head-up display with augmented reality

Head-up display – operation.
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-head-up-display

Driving data

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Infotainment:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start

› Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

› The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the

memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

From charging

› The memory stores driving data from the last charging. The memory is reset the next time charging is done.

Operation

Displaying driving data

Driving data can be displayed in the **MENU** > > > Infotainment system menu.

Selecting memory

To select the memory, press the relevant tab on the Infotainment system screen in **MENU** > > > menu.

Resetting memory

The memory can be reset in the Infotainment system in the following way:

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Driving data*

› Reset the relevant memory

Or:

MENU > > >

› Pressing the **0.0** button resets the relevant memory.

ⓘ Resetting the long-term memory also clears (resets) the range calculation data.

Settings

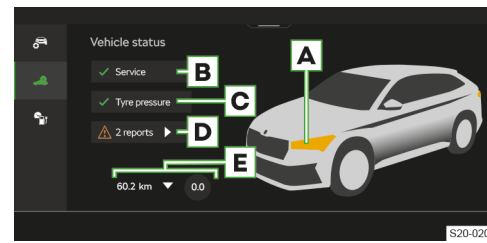
Setting units

The units are set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > .

Vehicle status

Display

The vehicle status can be displayed in the following menu of the Infotainment system **MENU** > > .



A The colour-coded vehicle parts highlight the relevant warning messages

B Service dates and vehicle identification number (VIN)

C Tyre pressure check

D Warning messages about the vehicles status and their number

E Total distance travelled and distance travelled (trip)

The distance travelled (trip) can be reset by tapping **0.0**.

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

🛈 The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (Hazard) or ⚠ (Warning) are displayed.

Button SET

Overview

The SET button allows quick access to the settings of the following vehicle systems (depending on the vehicle fittings):

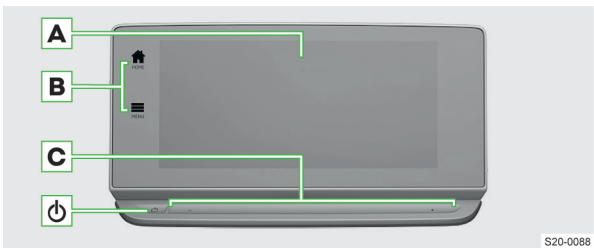
- Switching on the stabilization program ESC Sport » page 197, Overview
- Interior monitoring » page 46, Settings
- Tyre pressure monitor » page 277, Functionality
- Access to selection and settings for driver assistance systems
- Access to other vehicle settings

Familiarization with infotainment

Infotainment overview

Infotainment overview

Infotainment with 10″ screen



A Touchscreen

B Sensor fields

- **HOME** – Preferred menus
- **MENU** – All menus

C Touch slider for operating the infotainment functions:

- Set the interior temperature
- Volume setting
- Zoom in / out of the map in Navigation

⏻ Condition-based:

- **Infotainment switched off**
  - **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- **Infotainment switched on**
  - **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

Infotainment with 13″ screen



A Touchscreen

B Touch slider for operating the infotainment functions:
- › Set the interior temperature
- › Volume setting
- › Zoom in / out of the map in Navigation

⏻ Condition-based:
- › **Infotainment switched off**
  - › **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- › **Infotainment switched on**
  - › **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - › **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

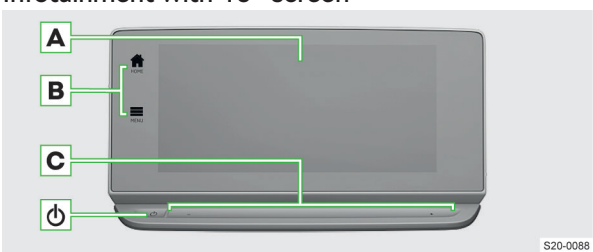
ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

Infotainment overview

Infotainment with 10″ screen



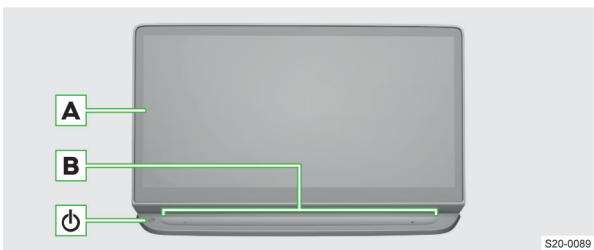
A Touchscreen

B Sensor fields
- › **HOME** – Preferred menus
- › **MENU** – All menus

C Touch slider for operating the infotainment functions:
- › Set the interior temperature
- › Volume setting
- › Zoom in / out of the map in Navigation

⏻ Condition-based:
- › **Infotainment switched off**
  - › **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- › **Infotainment switched on**
  - › **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - › **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

Infotainment with 13″ screen



A Touchscreen

B Touch slider for operating the infotainment functions:

› Set the interior temperature
› Volume setting
› Zoom in / out of the map in Navigation

⏻ Condition-based:
› **Infotainment switched off**
› **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
› **Infotainment switched on**
› **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
› **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

ⓘ NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

HOME menu

Usage
The HOME menu is used for the quick start of preferred functions.

The functional areas can be set and their arrangement can be changed.

› To **display the menu** HOME tap the sensor field **HOME** in infotainment.

Settings

Display another page
› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen and drag to the left or right.

Add a preferred menu
› To **display the editing mode** hold a finger on the screen.
› Tap a free space with functional areas.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

The Infotainment only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with functional areas that are currently free.

› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Remove the preferred menu
› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
› Tap 🗑 on the desired menu.
› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Add/remove one side of the HOME menu
› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
› Tap on ✎.
› To **add another page**, tap **+**.

The maximum number of pages is 4.

› Tap 🗑 to **remove a page**.

The minimum number of pages is 2.

› Tap ⮌ to **return to the edit mode**.

Preferred functions

Usage

Applies to the 13 ˝ screen Infotainment.

Infotainment offers the option of setting 3 preferred functions in the middle of the status bar to enable them to be started quickly.

Operation

Applies to the 13 ˝ screen Infotainment.

Add a preferred function

› Hold your finger in the area of the preferred functions in the status bar on the infotainment screen.
› To display a menu of functions, hold your finger on the selected function and move it to the position of the preferred functions in the status bar.
› To complete the process, tap the symbol ⮌.

Remove the preferred function

› Hold your finger on the shortcut of the function in the status bar on the infotainment screen.
› Tap the symbol 🗑.

MENU menu

Usage

Available infotainment menus are displayed in the menu MENU.

The menu MENU will be displayed by tapping the **MENU** sensor field on the Infotainment screen.

Settings

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Configuration wizard

Functionality

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is on and there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
› For **manual display** **MENU** > ⚙ > tap *Configuration wizard* .

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

ŠKODA AUTO keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu:

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Restore factory settings

Factory settings

Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙.
› *Reset to factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

ⓘ Resetting to factory settings will deactivate the ŠKODA Connect services. To activate this, it is necessary to restart the infotainment and reactivate the services.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* .

System update

If the vehicle is connected to the Internet, the system can be updated using the *» page 180* online system update function.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Display all updates*.
› Select the required update and follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Sound

Settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > 🔊.

The following menu items can be set:

› Setting the equalizer
› Adjusting the volume ratio
› Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:

› Volume adjustment of voice commands
› Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
› Speed-dependent volume setting
› Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

› Setting space optimisation
› Setting the audio profiles according to genre
› Adjusting the subwoofer volume

ⓘ The volume can be adjusted by moving a finger on the touch slider below the infotainment screen.

Infotainment operation

Operation on the screen

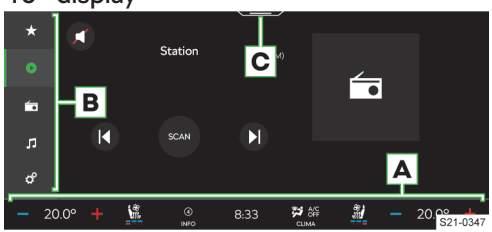
What you should be mindful of

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

Overview

10″ display

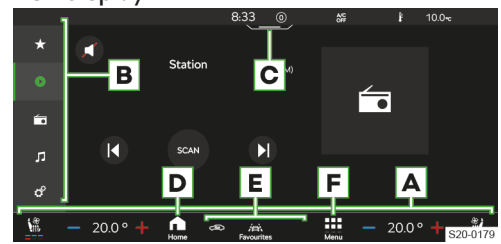


A Status bar

B Bar with buttons of the displayed menu

C Displaying the Infotainment system control centre

13″ display



A Status bar

B Bar with buttons of the displayed menu

C Displaying the Infotainment system control centre

D Displaying HOME

E Preferred functions

F Displaying MENU

Operation

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

For help with gesture control, see the instructions in the Infotainment.

Displaying control assistance

› Tap **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

› Image of the screen background
› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

Video – The Infotainment system display

The Infotainment system – operation on the display

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-infotainment

Keyboard

Overview

The layout of the keypad characters depends on the currently set keypad language and the set Infotainment language.

Keypad types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Input keypad
› Search keypad

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically**when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ▼.

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol ▼.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap ⊕ on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the other character variant.

› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› For **set-up** MENU > ⚙ > tap *Additional keypad languages* .

› Select the desired language.

Control Centre

Usage

The Infotainment control centre provides quick access to preferred functions.

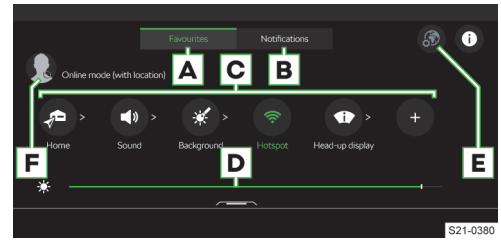
Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Control Centre



A Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features

B Display list of informational messages

C Preferred functions

D Setting the instrument and key illumination

E Privacy settings.

F Display user account management.

Closing the control centre

› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Setting buttons of preferred functions

› To **display** the edit mode, hold the empty button with the **+** symbol or hold an occupied button.

› To **add** a preferred feature, hold and drag the button with the desired feature from the bottom of the display to a button at the top of the display.
› To **close** the edit mode, press ⮌.

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Vice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

The dialogue can be interrupted at any time and a new command can be given. There is no need to wait for the response to complete.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition and control of other vehicle functions.

Online voice control can be used, for example, to search for special destinations or to dictate an SMS message if the connected phone allows it.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

Extended online voice control

Enhanced online voice control of the vehicle extends the functionality to search for navigation and special destinations online using the vehicle's current GPS position. This option will improve the relevance of search results and speed up system response.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Infotainment switched on

Voice control function conditions

In order to use the voice control, the following additional conditions must be met:

✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
✓ ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing ŠKODA Connect services.
✓ *Online mode* and *Location sharing* are switched on in the vehicle.

Extended Voice Control – conditions

In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

✓ The voice assistant in the vehicle is granted access to the current GPS position of the vehicle.

Operation

Switching voice control on

› Press »€ on the multi-function steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

The symbol will appear after activation.

Entering a voice command

› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

You can speed up voice control as follows:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** together with the voice command.

› Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot".

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control

A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

› Press on the Infotainment system display.

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Stopping a message being played

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say a new voice command.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restrictions

Voice control is not available for some Infotainment languages. The Infotainment system will alert you to this fact.

The directional microphone only obeys the voice commands of the user who has woken up the voice assistant.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system and it is not always possible to guarantee complete comprehensibility of e.g. street or city names.

The voice control cannot be used while a phone call is in progress and you can only dictate an SMS message from the driver's seat.

Settings

The following voice control features can be set in the **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* menu:

› Setting the tone

› Enabling/disabling the use of an activation command

Giving/revoking consent to the voice assistant to access the current GPS position of the vehicle

› Press **MENU** > *Instructions* > *Speech* > *Navigation* > *Optimizing search for destinations* online.

ⓘ Consent can also be set in MyŠKODA application.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"*Help*"**.

The **"*Help*"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > ▣ > 🔊.

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"*overview*"**.

Radio

FM Radio

Overview

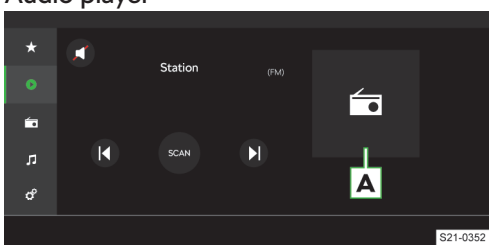
Display menu

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > ⊙.

Audio player



A Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

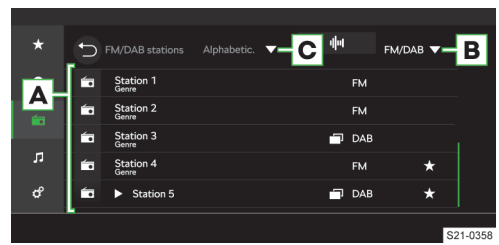
SCAN Switching the SCAN function on/off

🔇 Switching the sound on/off

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.

› To select a frequency range, tap ▼ in the top right corner.



A List of available stations

B Selecting a frequency range

After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

C List sorting option

Displaying the available frequency ranges

After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

Finding stations manually

The *FM/DAB (local)* frequency range is displayed only by radios with strong signal.

Operation

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ › in the **Radio** main menu.

› To delete **one** preset button, tap on .

› To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on and confirm the deletion.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.

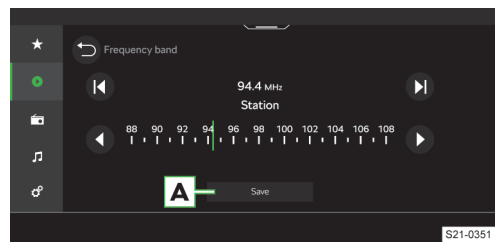
› To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually

› Display list of available sensors.

› Tap on .

For FM station, the functional surface is available when the FM range in the selection of the frequency range **MENU** > > > is set.



/ Switch to the previous/next available station

/ Look for each other

A Store the currently selected station on a station key for the preferred station.

The frequency range scale can be used for the search.

› Hold down the scroll mark and move it to the desired position.

Function areas ⏮ / ⏭

The variant for **changing stations** is set as follows using the functional areas ⏮/⏭:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Radio* › *Changing the station:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Restriction

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch RDS on / off

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic

› Radio text

› RDS Regional

› Automatic frequency change (AF)

› Regional station logo

Turn on/off radio text reception

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Radio text* .

Advanced setting

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* › *Automatic frequency change (AF)* .

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *RDS Regional:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:
  › *Fix* – When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
  › *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

ⓘ If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Add the station logo

Infotainment offers the option of adding logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio* > *Tap station logos* and select the desired frequency range.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on ✎ > 🖼 at the desired preset button.
› Select the desired logo.

ⓘ To turn off the logo display, tap on 📻 in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Regional FM station logo

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

› Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
› Tap *Radio* > *Station region logo*.

DAB radio

Overview

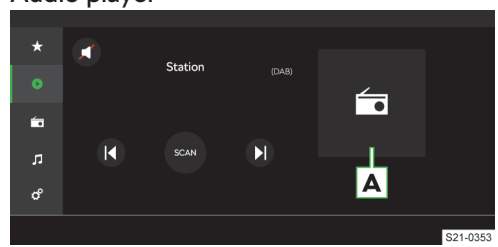
Display menu

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > ⏵.

Audio player



A Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

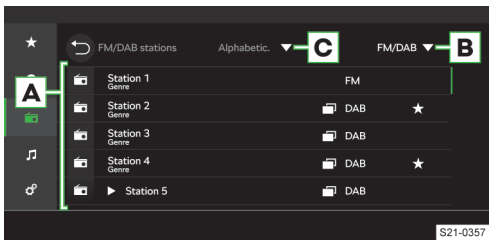
SCAN Switching the SCAN function on/off

Switching the sound on/off

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap MENU > ♫ > 📻.

› To select a frequency range, tap ▼ in the top right corner.



A List of available stations

B Selecting a frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

C List sorting option

⮌ Displaying the available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.

🛈 The *FM/DAB (local)* frequency range is displayed only by radios with strong signal.

Operation

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ > + in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on 📻 in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ > ✎ in the **Radio** main menu.

› To delete **one** preset button, tap on 🗑.

› To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.

› To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Function areas ⏮ / ⏭

The variant for **changing stations** is set as follows using the functional areas ⏮/⏭:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Radio* › *Changing the station:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

Settings

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* › *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* › *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* › *Radio text* .

Advanced setting

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* › *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Adding station logos

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

› Tap ⚙ › *Radio* › *Radio stations logos* in the**Radio** menu.

Or:

› Tap ✎ › 🗗 the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
› Select the desired logo.

🛈 To turn off the logo display, tap 📻 in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.

› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.

› Tap *Radio* > *Display images from a slideshow*.

WEB radio and podcasts

Overview

Display menu

› Tap on MENU > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player

› Tap on MENU > ♫ > ⏵.

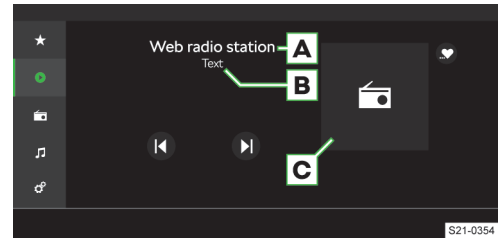
Web radio player

› To **select web radio** from the **Radio** menu, tap 📻>▼>*Web radio*.

› Select the web station from the display lists.

Or:

› Tap 🔍 to search a web radio station.



A Station name

B Broadcast content information

C Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station

The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

❤ Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

🛈 If the grey 📡 symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

Podcast player

› To **select a podcast** in the**Radio** menu, tap > ♫ > 📻 > ▼ > *Web radio*.

› Select the podcast from the display lists.

Or:

› Tap 🔍 to search podcasts.

🛈 The podcasts are marked with the 🎙 symbol in the displayed lists.



A Podcast name

B Broadcast content information

C Podcast logo

▷ **Tapping:** starting playback

▯▯ **Tapping:** pause

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station

The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

⏪15 **Pressing:** moving 15 seconds back

15⏩ **Pressing:** moving 15 seconds forward

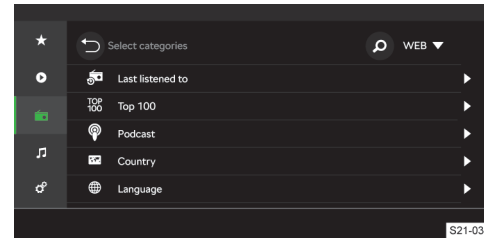
♥ Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

View episodes from the podcast being played

🛈 If the grey symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› Tap 📻 > ▼ > *Web radio* in the **Radio** menu to **display a list**.



Searching for web radio stations and podcasts

Web radio stations and podcasts last listened to

Top 100 favourite radio stations based on the Infotainment system language setting

Searching and selecting podcasts

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the country

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the language

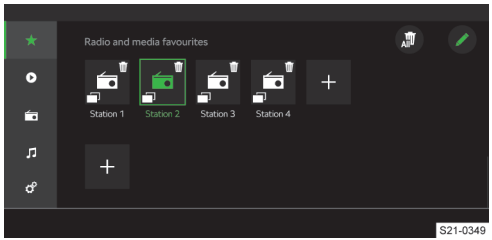
Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the content

🛈 The podcasts are marked with the symbol in the displayed lists.

Preset buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

The preset buttons can be used to store stations from all available frequency ranges as well as web radio stations and podcasts.

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > ★.



+ Store current station or podcast

✎ Switch edit mode on/off

› 🗑 – Delete all preset buttons for preferred stations and media

› 🗑 – Delete the desired preset button

› ▣ – Change logo

ⓘ The position of the stored preset buttons can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.

› Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.

› Move the preset button to a different position.

Conditions

✓ The vehicle has an active data licence.

ⓘ You can extend the data licence after the due date from the Shop Infotainment system menu.

Operation

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on 📻 in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ › ✎ in the **Radio** main menu.

› To delete **one** preset button, tap on 🗑.

› To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

Function areas ⏮ / ⏭

The variant for **changing stations** using functional surfaces ⏮ / ⏭ in the **Radio** menu, is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Changing the station:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Restriction

› In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

Settings

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on ⚙ > Audio quality: in the **Radio** main menu. *Audio quality:* .

› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

🛈 If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

Player

Overview

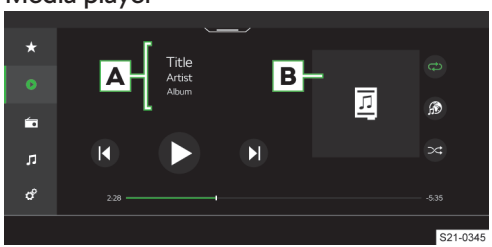
Displaying menu

› Tap **MENU** > ♫ > ♫.

Display the player

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫ > ⊙.

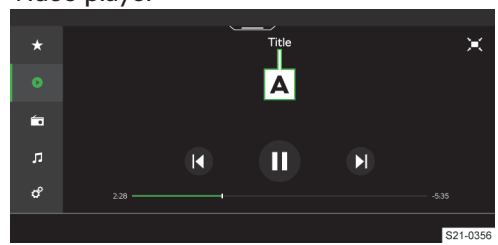
Media player



A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B Album image

Video player



A Name of the track being played

⤧ Stretching the image

⤧ Downloading an image

Player controls

Operation – basics

▷ **Tapping:** starting playback

▯▯ **Tapping:** pause

- **Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback:** playing the previous track
- **Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback**: playing the current track from the beginning
- **Holding:** fast rewinding within the track
- **Tapping:** playing the next track
- **Holding:** fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

- Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
- Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
- Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder
- Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

"My playlist" management

- To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on in the media player.
- To **display the playlist**, tap on ♫.
- Tap on until the media list for the current source is displayed.
- Tap on > .
- To **manage the playlist** tap in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

- Control playback
- Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving to the desired position.
- Delete track by tapping on .

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Traffic

- To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

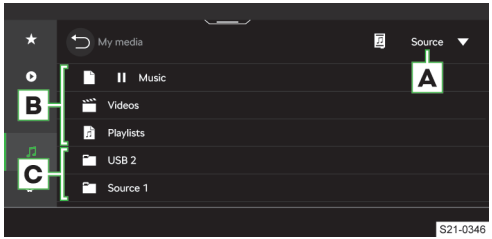
Manage files

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Media list



A Select source

B Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected mobile devices

⮌ Show available sources

Preferred media

The currently played media can be stored on the preset buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

› To **display** tap on ★ in the **Media** menu.

Operation

Manage favourites

› To **to save** the preferred medium tap ★ › + and select the desired menu item.

› To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 and confirm the deletion..

› To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 and confirm the deletion..

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Technical data and specifications

USB

Applies to USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	

Type	Specification	File system
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

ⓘ Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.

› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

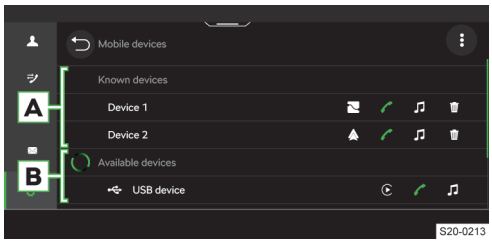
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® "hands-free profile"

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile

Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⋮ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.

› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.

› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Using the phone

Overview

Display menu

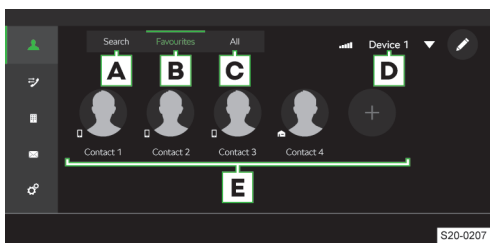
› Tap on **MENU** > .

If there are no phone features available, check that the mobile device is connected.

Manage contacts

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Contact search

B Display favourite contacts

C Display the list of all contacts

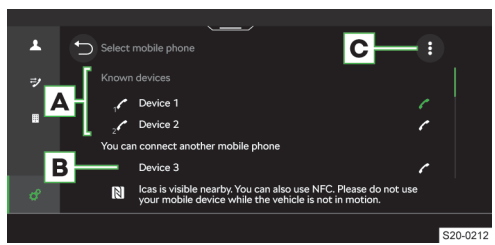
D Name of the main telephone

E Preset buttons for preferred contacts

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Manage telephones

› In the **Telephone** >menu *Select mobile phone* .



A Main telephone, additional telephone and known devices

B List of available telephones

C Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function

The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® "hands-free profile"

Delete telephone from the list of known devices

To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the icon press and drag to the left.

If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

- The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

  The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⋮ > *Bluetooth*.
- Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

  The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⋮ > *Visibility*.
- The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Restriction

For safety reasons, it is not possible to pair new devices while driving.

Phone - Infotainment connection

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

- **No telephone** – The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- **One telephone** – The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- **Two telephones** – Select the telephone to be replaced.
- To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **Phone** ▼ in any menu.
- Select the desired phone.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

- Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

  The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⋮ > *Device name:* .
- Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

- Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
- Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.
- Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
- Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
- If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.

Or:

› Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** menu.

› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.

› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Manage contacts

Operation

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on 👤 in the **Phone** menu.

› To **store the contact**, tap on +.

› Select or search for the desired contact.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **delete the contact** tap on 👤 > ✎ in the **Phone** menu.

  › To delete **one** preset, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

  › To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

ⓘ The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.

› Hold down the desired contact until it is free.

› Move the contact to another position.

Settings

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* .

› Select the desired sorting mode.

Tap on Advanced setting

Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ >menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Telephone conversation

Overview

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- End connection / reject incoming call / end call
- Accept incoming call
- Hold a call
- Return to the call on hold
- Switch the ringer off / on
- Switch the microphone off / on
- Show details of the caller
- Reject an incoming call using an SMS message
- Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
  The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap on .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

› For **establishing a connection** .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Settings

Turn call rejection with a message on/off

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** > menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off

This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

› In the **Telephone** > menu *HD voice quality* .

Tap on Advanced setting

Ringtone

Some phones do not support the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** > menu *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Conference call

Overview

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- Return to the held conference call
- / Switch the microphone off / on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

Operation

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings

Turn call rejection with a message on/off

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** > menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

SMS

Operation

Sending a text message

› Tap > in the **Phone** menu.

Depending on the connected phone, you may still need to select SMS.

› Tap .

› Type and confirm the text message, and a preview of the message will appear.

If you tap the text area in the message preview, the message can be edited.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

Several recipients can be included.

› Tap *Send*.

Displaying received text messages

› Tap > in the **Phone** menu.

Depending on the connected phone, you may still need to select SMS.

› Received messages are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following settings.

To **switch on/off displaying messages as a conversation**, tap ⚙ > *Display messages as conversation* in the **Phone** menu.

› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap ⚙ > *Notification of new messages* in the **Phone** menu.

ⓘ Depending on the context, the Infotainment system can read for you a text message using Infotainment-generated voice, if you tap 🔊.

ⓘ To quickly reply to the selected message, tap 💬 and select the desired reply.

Settings

Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off

When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Show messages as conversation* .

Switching on/off graphical notification of receiving a new message

If the feature is activated, a new message symbol will appear in the status bar and on the message button when a new message is received.

› Tap ⚙ > *Notification of new messages* i the**Phone** menu.

Email

Operation

Sending an email

› Tap ✉ > ▼ in the **Phone** menu.
› Select the desired email.
› Tap ✉+.
› Enter the subject of the message.
› Write and confirm an email.
› Search for or select the recipient of the email.

Several recipients can be included.

› Tap *Send*.

Displaying a received email

› Tap ✉ > ▼ in the **Phone** menu.
› Select the desired email.

You can select the following features in the email displayed:

▼ Reply to all or only to sender
✉+ Reply with a new email
✉ Forward email
⋮ Manage email

If the 📎 symbol is displayed, the email contains an attachment.

Settings

Switching on/off graphical notification of receiving new email

If the feature is activated a new message symbol will appear in the status bar and on the message button when a new message is received.

› Tap ⚙ > *Notification of new messages* i the**Phone** menu.

Voice mailbox

Operation

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› Tap on **MENU** > 📞 > ⠿.

› Tap on ⌾.

🛈 If no voice mailbox number is entered, a menu for entering this number will be displayed.

Settings

Voice mailbox number

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *Mailbox number:* .

› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

WLAN use

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLink connection.

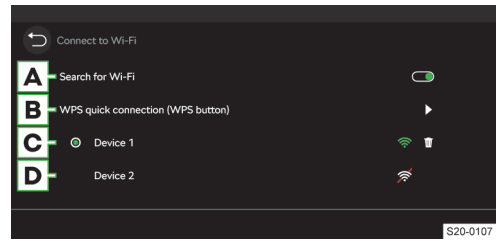
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Connected devices* .

Overview of available hotspots

List of available hotspots

› For **displaying the list** **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* .



A Search for available visible hotspots
B Connection to the hotspot via WPS
C Previously connected hotspots
D Available hotspots
⊙ Currently connected hotspot
🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection
Signal strength of the hotspot
Hotspot signal is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with access protection and WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› The WiFi hotspot of the infotainment in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Use as a hotspot* switch on

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the infotainment is the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network name:* .

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Password:* .

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Search for WLAN* switch on

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

🛈 Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Password:* .

› Enter the password and confirm.

Data transmission with the connected device

› To switch data transmission on / off with the connected device **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Connected devices* > 🌍.

Tap on Advanced setting

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network name:* .

› Enter the name and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic connection using the QR code

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic WPS connection

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS-PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS-PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS-PIN* .
› Enter the WPS-PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Self-help

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

› Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
› Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
› For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
› If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Use of SmartLink Function

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

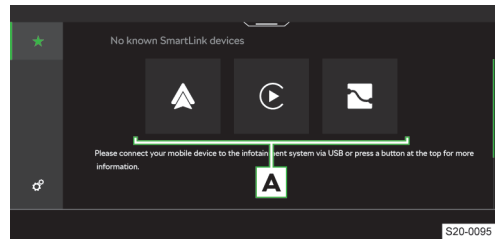
- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLinkconnection

Display menu

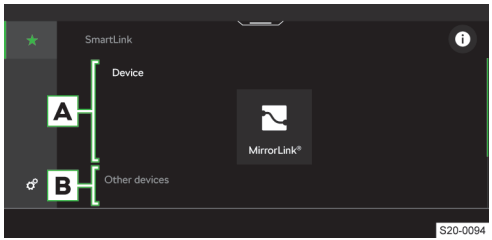
› Tap on **MENU** > .

Menu if no device connected



A List of supporting connection types

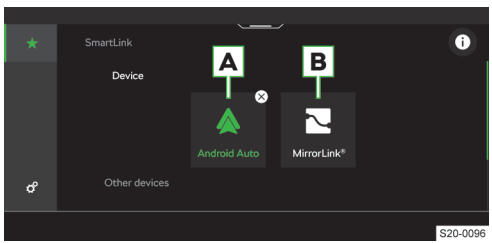
Connected devices menu



A List of connected devices and available connection types

B List of available devices

Menu for a device in use



A Used connection type

B Available connection type

⊗ Disconnecting

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ The mobile device, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

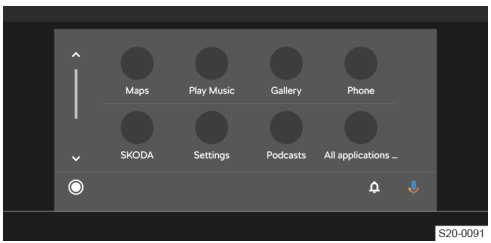
› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.

› Select the desired device or connection type.

Android Auto

Connection overview

› Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the type of ⩓ connection.



◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

🎙 Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.

✓ The mobile device and Android Auto connectivity are supported in the relevant country.

✓ The Android Auto application is installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Android Auto application.

If there is route guidance in the Android Auto application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

Settings

Connection via USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the USB input using a cable.
› Select connection via Android Auto.

Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment from

› **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® hands-free profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ⏏ symbol.

Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices from

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.
✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

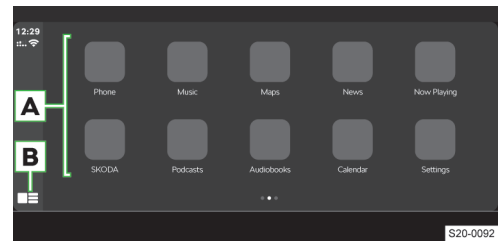
Terminating the connection

› Tap ◉ > "SKODA" in the Android Auto menu.
› Tap ⊗.

Apple CarPlay

Connection overview

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type ⓒ.



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
› **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
› **Hold:** Turn on Siri voice control

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlay connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ The mobile device as well as the Apple CarPlay connection are supported in the respective country.

- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

Settings

Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the USB input using a cable.
› Select connection via Apple CarPlay.

Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment from

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
› **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol ◙.
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices from

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the 🎤 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

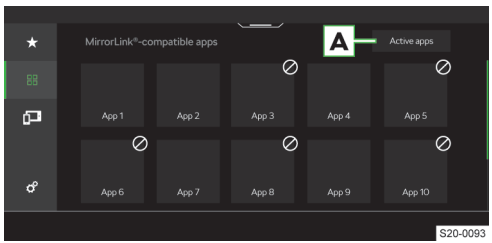
Disconnecting

› In the menu Apple CarPlay, tap on the function area “SKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink

Connection overview

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type .



A Display of running applications
⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
★ Display of available devices
List of applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
Settings

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The mobile device as well as the MirrorLink connection are supported in the respective country.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Operation of the running application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom
Display of control surfaces at the top
Return to the menu MirrorLink

Settings

Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the USB input using a cable.
› Select connection via MirrorLink.

Disconnecting

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on ★.
› Tap on .

Navigation

Map

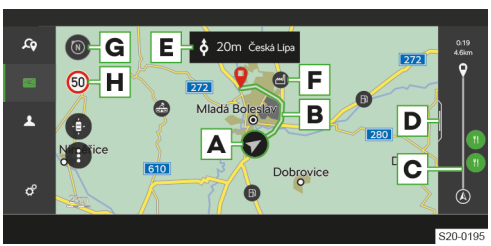
Overview

Display menu

› Tap on **MENU** > .

Map overview

› Tap in the **Navigation** menu.



A Vehicle location

B Route

C Route preview

D **Pressing and dragging to the left:** displaying the route overview

E The following navigation instruction

F Symbol of specific target

Tapping: displaying the details of the destination

G **Tapping:** changing map orientation

› 2D north-facing map

› 2D map oriented by direction of travel

› 3D map oriented by direction of travel

H Traffic signs for the route section

Exit navigation

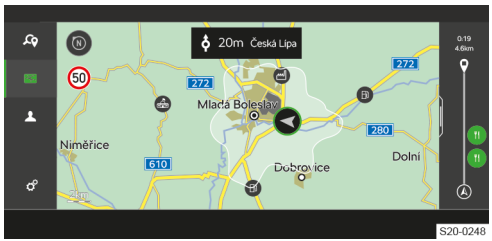
Map centred on vehicle position

Displaying menu for setting the map view

Map with range information

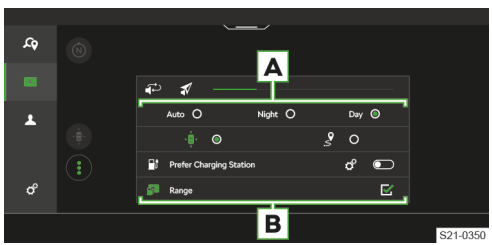
The map shows the projected range by highlighted road sections.

› Tap > .



Selecting the type of map to display

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap > .



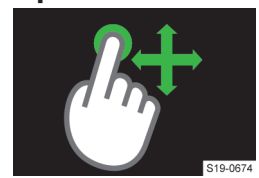
A The map displayed is based on the following settings:

- › *Auto* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
- › *Day* – map in day mode
- › *Night* – map in night mode

B When navigation is in progress, you can select one of the following map displays:

- › – map centred on the vehicle's position
- › – map with the entire route / alternative routes selection
- › – enabling/disabling the preferred charging station filter
- › – setting up preferred charging stations filter
- › – switching on/off the map with range information

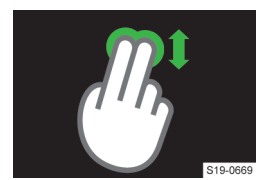
Operation



› Move map



› Enter destination by tapping the map item



› Switch 2D/3D map display



› Zoom into the map



› Zoom out of the map



› Rotate the map

You can zoom in / out on the map by moving two fingers on the touch slider below the infotainment screen.

Settings

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Set preferred POI categories* .

› Set favourite categories.

Show charging stations

The charging stations can be displayed on the map.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Set preferred POI categories* .

› Choose category .

When the vehicle is online, the system provides up-to-date information available related to the selected charging station.

Enabling/disabling the preferred charging station filter

When the filter is enabled, only charging stations that meet the set parameters will be highlighted on the map.

› Tap > > in the **Navigation**.

If the filter is enabled, the other special targets categories are not displayed on the map.

Setting up preferred charging stations filter

› Tap > > in the **Navigation**.

› Set the desired charging station parameters.

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner.

Determining the navigation database version

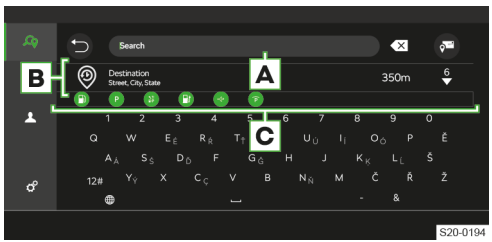
› **MENU** > > *System information* .

Find destination

Overview

Finding a destination

› Tap › *Search* in the **Navigation** menu.



A Input line

B Last searched destination

C Categories of specific destinations

› **Tap:** search by the category selected

▼ Displaying the list of searched entries

Setting the destination by entering the address

Destination details

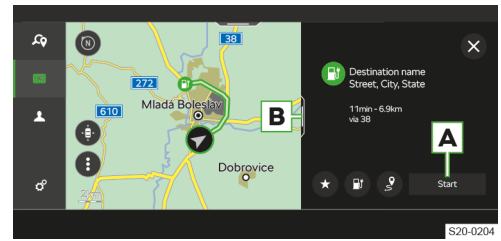
The window with details include a map, available destination information and buttons for selecting functions.

The target details window will be displayed in the following cases:

› After finding or selecting a destination in the menu.

› After you tap the destination in the route overview

› After you tap a point or a special destination symbol on the map



A Starting navigation to the destination

› ★ – saving the destination as a preferred one

› ★ – deleting a favourite destination

› – saving the destination as a charging station

› – deleting a charging station

› - displaying the route

B **Tapping and dragging to the left:** enlarging the window with destination details

Depending on the context and the type of destination, the following functions will be displayed:

› *Demo* – setting the destination as a starting point for navigation in demo mode

› *Rename* – changing the name of the saved destination

› *Call* – dialling the phone number of a special destination

› *Edit* – an option to edit the home or work address

› *Add* – adding a destination to the route
› *Stop route guidance* – stopping navigation

Operation

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter destination via the address

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

Enter the destination using GPS coordinates

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > > *Enter latitude and longitude* .

A menu is displayed for entering the destination using GPS coordinates.

› Enter the desired GPS latitude and longitude information.
› *Map* .

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

Selecting a destination by tapping a point on the map

› Tap the desired point or a special destination symbol on the map.

The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Settings

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Set preferred POI categories* .
› Set favourite categories.

Video – Charging stations

Navigation – search for a charging station

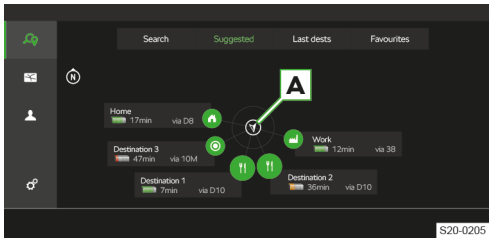
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-charging-sations

Predictive destinations

Overview

Suggested destinations

› Tap > *Suggestions* in the **Navigation** menu.



A Vehicle position oriented north

Home address destination

Work address destination

Up to 5 recommended destinations from the following categories can be displayed in the preview:

› Home address destination
› Work address destination
› Favourite destinations
› Recent destinations
› Predictive destinations

The destinations are oriented according to the direction to the current location of the vehicle. The destination button displays information about the estimated time to your destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction symbol is displayed.

Operation

Delete the suggested destination

› Touch the functional area for the suggested destination and swipe left.
› Tap on .

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern* .

Settings

Turn predictive destination suggestions on / off

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by Infotainment depending on the number of journeys and the daily travel time to the given destination.

If the predictive destination suggestion function is turned on, the destinations are offered in the suggested destinations as well as during the travel by the system.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Learn usage pattern* .

Last destinations

Overview

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Last destinations* .

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Delete last destination

› Touch the functional area for the last destination and swipe left.
› Tap on 🗑.

Favourites

Overview

List of preferred destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Favourites* .

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Deleting favourites

› Touch the functional area for the favourites and swipe left.
› Tap on 🗑.

Renaming a favourite destination

› Tap the button for the favourite destination and swipe left.
› Tap ✎.

Settings

Setting home address

› **MENU** > > > *Favourites* > *At home* .
› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the home address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on proposals* > .

Set the work address

› **MENU** > > > *Favourites* > *Work* .
› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

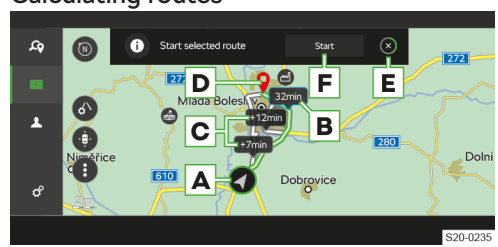
The defined destination for the work address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on proposals* > .

Route guidance

Overview

Calculating routes



A Current vehicle position
B Suggested fastest route
C Alternative routes

D Destination location

E 15 seconds countdown before automatic start of navigation

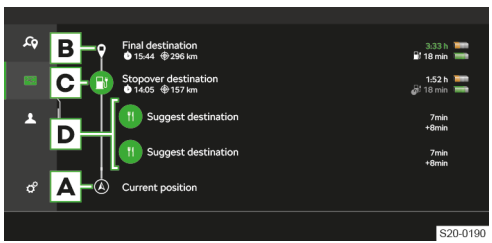
› **Pressing:** interrupting the countdown

F Starting navigation

ⓘ Displaying the selected route information

Setting parameters for route calculation

Route overview



A Information on the current vehicle position

B Final destination of the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on the map*

› *Stop route guidance*

C Inserted destination of the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on the map*

› *Delete*

D Destination offered by the Infotainment system on the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:

› *Show on the map*

› *Add inserted destination*

Traffic density overview

If the ŠKODA Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the route overview:

Low density — — — **High density**

— Traffic density information is not available

Change route destinations to each other

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Turning voice navigation instructions on/off

› Tap ⋮ > .

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ⋮ > 🔈.

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Setting navigation announcements

› **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Navigation announcements* .

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Set route options

› **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on route options* .

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Enabling/disabling automatic adding charging stations on the route

If the function is enabled, the Infotainment system will automatically add charging stations on the route if necessary.

› Tap **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Destination navigation* > *Route parameters* > *Automatically add charging stations*.

Enabling/disabling the preferred charging station filter

When the filter is enabled, only charging stations that meet the set parameters will be highlighted on the map.

› Tap 🚘 > ⋮ > ⛽ in the **Navigation**.

ⓘ If the filter is enabled, the other special targets categories are not displayed on the map.

Setting up preferred charging stations filter

› Tap 🚘 > ⋮ > ⚙ in the **Navigation**.

› Set the desired charging station parameters.

Switch range warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the charge status of the high-voltage battery drops below 10%, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest charging station.

› **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Range warning* .

Setting the minimum range

› Tap **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Destination navigation* > *Route parameters*.

› Tap ⚙ in *Automatically add charging stops*.

› Select the desired range.

Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Advanced setting

Switch road sign display on/off

› **MENU** > 🧭 > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Traffic sign* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off

› **MENU** > > > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Traffic sign* .

› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› **MENU** > > > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Signs on motorways* .

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› **MENU** > > > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Country information at border crossing* .

Towing a trailer

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› **MENU** > > > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Tap on Take trailers into account* .

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› **MENU** > > > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* .

› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Demo mode

Usage

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

Settings

Switching demo mode on / off

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode

› Turn on the demo mode.

› **MENU** > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* > *Defining the starting point of the demo mode* .

› Select the desired destination to be used as the starting point for the demo mode.

Or:

› Turn on the demo mode.

› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.

Destination details are displayed.

› Display the window with destination details in full screen.

The window is enlarged by pressing the ❙ button in the window bar swiping left.

› *Demo* .

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services are available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as in the MyŠKODA application.

Functionality

The ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the MyŠKODA application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website

The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. the current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the reference to the ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the MyŠKODA application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

ŠKODA Connect Portal website

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

https://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Conditions

Conditions of use ŠKODA Connect

- ✓ ŠKODA Connect the services are active
- ✓ The registered user is authorised to use ŠKODA Connect services.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services

Availability depends on the following conditions:

› Cellular networks through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured are available.

  › The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

  › In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

› The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, infotainment and the respective country.

  › The availability can be checked on the following ŠKODA Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability of services status ŠKODA Connect

The availability of services is indicated by these symbols on the status bar on the Infotainment system screen:

› **White** – *Online mode* is activated. ŠKODA Connect services are available without localisation services.

› **White** – *Online mode (with position sharing)* is activated. ŠKODA Connect services are available with localization services.

› **Grey** – the vehicle is out of signal range.

› – *Online mode* is switched off. All ŠKODA Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.

MyŠKODA application

Functionality

MyŠKODA application

The MyŠKODA application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link:

www ***https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda-app***

Requirements

✓ The user has one ŠKODA ID account linked to the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active in the vehicle.

Data connection

Use

You need a data connection in the vehicle to use all online services.

Types of data connection setup

› By connecting the Infotainment to the external hotspot with Internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

› Using the **eSIM** for active ŠKODA Connect online services.

ⓘ For more information on the operation of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and an overview of data packages and countries available for purchase, please visit the following website:

www ***https://skoda.cubictelecom.com***

ⓘ Data packages can only be bought on the website.

Requirements

› In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
› The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
› ŠKODA AUTO can make changes to the mobile network in the meantime, e.g. generation-related replacement of an outdated technology; it assumes no liability.

Settings

Turn on/off the data connection for ŠKODA Connect online services

For ŠKODA Connect, the prepaid data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared via Wi-Fi with another 8 connected devices.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)* .

Overview of online service data connection usage ŠKODA Connect

On the following website on your user account in the data connection overview, you have the option of purchasing data

packages retrospectively and displaying the current status of the packages you have already purchased:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

By registering as a user, you will receive a ŠKODA ID user account that you can use in all ŠKODA applications and services.

You can register as a ŠKODA Connect user in MyŠKODA application.

› Follow the instructions in MyŠKODA application to register.

When registering, create an S-PIN.
You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

Services activation ŠKODA Connect

The services are activated by the login of the main user.

After the main user is activated, the *Position sharing* mode is switched off.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a party to the use of ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and privacy rights.

Inform vehicle users and passengers that the vehicle transmits user data and uses location services. Failure to inform may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

If your travel companion does not agree to use location services, turn off *Location sharing*.

Functionality

When using ŠKODA Connect, data about the user, the vehicle and localisation services information is transferred.

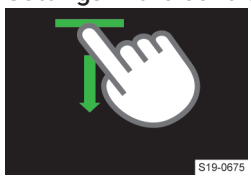
Disabled *Online mode* affects sending data and transferring data using eSIM. It does not affect the data transmission of the connected device via WLAN.

Settings

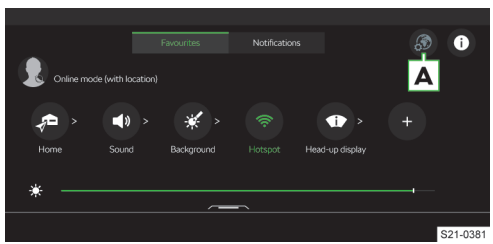
Legally required services, such as emergency calls, cannot be switched off.

The vehicle user can enable/disable *Online mode* and *Location sharing*.

Settings in the control centre



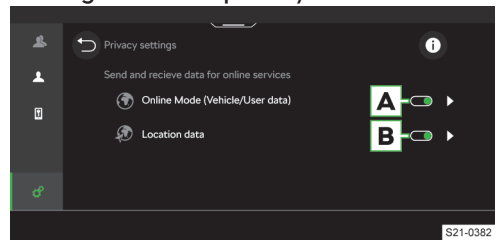
› Open the Infotainment control centre by tapping and dragging the bar at the top of the display downwards.



A Setting maximum privacy mode

ⓘ Detailed information

Setting maximum privacy mode



A Switching *Online mode* on/off

B Enabling/disabling *Location sharing*

ⓘ Information on setting up privacy mode

Enabling/disabling *Online mode* in the *User* menu

› Tap **MENU** > *User* > ⚙ > *Setting maximum privacy mode*.

› Select the desired item.

ⓘ The symbol of enabled/disabled *Online mode* and *Location sharing* is displayed in the status bar.

Disabled *Online mode*

› All ŠKODA Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.

› All localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.

› Information transfer via eSIM is disabled.

› No online updates are available.

Enabled *Online mode* and enabled *Location sharing*

› All ŠKODA Connect are enabled.

› Vehicle location information is available for all services that require data of the vehicle's location.
› Vehicle location information is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website and in the MyŠKODA application.

Enabled *Online mode* and disabled *Location sharing*

› All ŠKODA Connect services apart from those using the vehicle's location are enabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Collection of anonymous data

If *Location sharing* is enabled, the vehicle can collect and send undisclosed data to improve the services of selected third parties.

These are exclusively undisclosed data without any link to a specific vehicle, its owner or other authorised user.

🛈 To use all ŠKODA Connect services, you must activate the *Location sharing* mode.

User management

What you should be mindful of

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner can still have the possibility to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

We therefore recommend deleting the previous main user's account by performing a factory reset. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

🛈 The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management:

› Select a user account
› Add and remove user accounts
› Set account security

Overview

The main user

The main user is registered in the Infotainment system with activated ŠKODA Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The main user can make full use of the personalisation function.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

The main user has access to remote vehicle functions.

All settings are stored in the main user's personal online account.

User with a ŠKODA Connect online account

The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are saved in the registered user's personal online account.

Guest

A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts:

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Log in user

After switching on the ignition ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the introductory login screen for the last user account used is displayed.

The introductory log on screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

› Confirm the log-in.

When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

› Select the menu item for switching user.

A menu containing available users is displayed.

› Select the desired account.

› When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

› Select the menu item for switching user.

A menu containing available users is displayed.

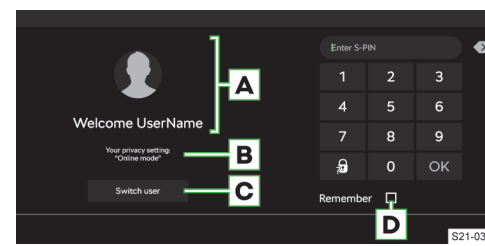
› If you are a new user, tap + for the user's login.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Log in to the protected user account

Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon .

To log in to the protected user account you need the S-PINcreated when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal Portal website, in the MyŠKODA application or when registering the user in infotainment.



A User name

B Information about the set level of protection for personal data

C Display user account management

D Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN

Display information about restoring the S-PIN

It is possible to switch user verification on / of by entering the S-PIN in the menu item **MENU** > > > *Credentials* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN* .

Restore S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the MyŠKODA application.

Log out user

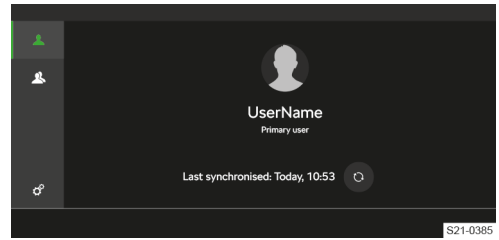
When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed, in which the selected vehicle functions can be activated.

When the time interval expires, the logout screen is switched of and the user is automatically logged off.

Settings

Managing the current user

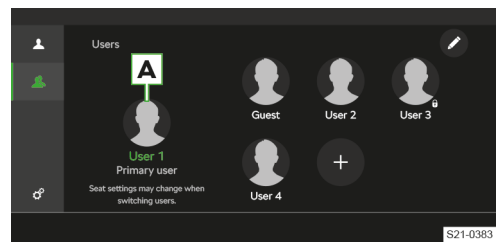
› Tap **MENU** > > .



Online account synchronisation

User management

› Tap **MENU** > > .



A Logged in main user of the vehicle

\+ Adding a new user

User account protected by an S-PIN.

Displaying edit mode

Delete user

› Tap **MENU** > > > > .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete the current user account

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Delete active user* .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete all users

Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Tap **MENU** > .

› *Restore factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

Personalisation

Usage

The personalisation service allows you to set, set and store vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another ŠKODA brand vehicle, the custom functions associated with the user account are set according to vehicle type, equipment and infotainment.

Online System Update

Use

Online updates allow you to update the software.

If an online update is available, it will be downloaded automatically and the customer will be informed of the new vehicle update, which s/he must approve.

For more information on the online update, its availability in each country, supported vehicles and the Infotainment systems, please visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

If you postpone accepting the update, the option to start the update will appear on the Infotainment system logout screen.

Operation

Download the update

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

ⓘ Information about successful download of the update is displayed in the infotainment.

Install the update

⚠ WARNING

During installation, some control devices including the connectivity control device (OCU) may not work.
In this event, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connectservices will be available.

› Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.
› It is not possible to charge the vehicle or switch on the ignition during installation.

ⓘ A warning light will illuminate in the digital instrument cluster while the update is being installed. The warning light will go out once the update is complete.

Conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

- ✓ Ignition is switched off.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services have been activated in the vehicle.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated in the vehicle.
- ✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery and the high-voltage battery have a sufficient level of charge.

Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

› A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect installation of the update.
› The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
› The digital instrument cluster illuminates and displays ⚠ *system update not completed. Pay attention to warning displays! Log book!*.

Shop

Use

You can do the following activities in the Infotainment system Shop menu:

› Order new features and services
› Renew purchased features and services

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the ŠKODA Connect Shop website.

www ***https://shop.skoda-connect.com***

Data packages

Data packages can also be used by devices connected via WLAN.

For more information and to purchase the ŠKODA Connect data packages, please visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Overview

› Tap **MENU** > .
› Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

Conditions

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- ✓ The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- ✓ The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged in.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection. The data connection may incur a charge.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

Restriction

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information call

Usage

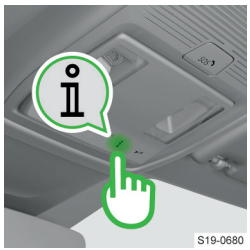
The information call may be used in the case of problems with the ŠKODA Connect services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

By pressing the button , the connection to the local Infoline is made.

Conditions

- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated.

Operation



› Press the ℹ button.

Breakdown call

Usage

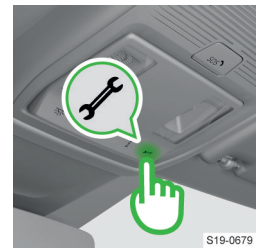
The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the key 🔧 a connection is established with the ŠKODABreakdown Service. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

Conditions

✓ The *Online mode* is activated.

Operation



› Press the 🔧 button.

ŠKODA Connect-Services

Use

Remote services iV

The iV Remote Vehicle Access service package allows you to remotely control some of the vehicle's functions and access the vehicle's information.

Available services include:

› Online air conditioning control
› Remote charging
› Smart plans

Infotainment Online

The Infotainment Online service extends the Infotainment system with online functions.

Available services include:

› Online traffic information

› Online map updates
› Charging stations

Remote access

The Remote Vehicle Access service package allows you access the vehicle's information.

Available services include:

› Vehicle status
› Parking position

Applications for the Infotainment system

Applications for the Infotainment system extend its functions.

Available services include:

› Offers
› Traffication
› Calendar

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

✓ *Online mode* and *Location sharing* are switched on in the vehicle.
✓ There is a registered user in the vehicle.
✓ ŠKODA Connect services are activated.
✓ ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Starting-off and Driving

Switch on the ignition

Operating conditions

- ✓ The high-voltage battery charging status is sufficient.
- ✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

› Always keep the key with you.

Operation

The ignition is switched on



› Press the starter button.

Or:

› Depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

When the ignition is switched on and the automatic gearbox mode is selected, the vehicle starts moving slowly.

› Before selecting the automatic transmission mode, depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

› If the vehicle is moving, the ignition must always be switched on.

⚠ NOTICE

In extremely cold outdoor temperatures, the temperature of the high-voltage battery can drop so much that it may not be possible to start.
The motor can be started again when the temperature of the high-voltage battery has risen sufficiently.

Switching ignition off

› Press the starter button.

The ignition is also switched off automatically when the driver leaves the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

› When getting out, always check that the car is secured with the parking brake.

Troubleshooting

Turning on the ignition is not possible, the system has not recognised the key

illuminates

› Insert the key into the cup holder at the front.
› Press the starter button.
› If ignition not switched on, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

It is not possible to switch off the ignition

› Hold the starter button or press twice.

Automatic gearbox

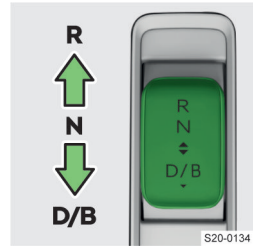
Automatic gearbox modes

Select automatic gearbox mode

› To change the automatic gearbox mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector lever then returns to the starting position.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



R **Reverse gear**
Select the mode **R only** when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**
There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/B **Forward drive/forward drive with strong recuperation**
The choice between **D** and **B** is made by moving the selector lever to the rear.

Unlock automatic gearbox

lights up - the automatic gearbox is locked

› Press the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!
› When the mode **D**, **B**, **R** or **N** is selected, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

› Turn on the ignition.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Use the selector lever to select the desired mode.

In the instrument cluster display *READY* is displayed in the status bar.

› Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selected mode **D/B** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Switch off the ignition.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Eco mode

ECO mode is suitable for a economic driving style. The engine power is limited, the maximum speed is reduced to 130 km/h. The Climatronic switches to economy mode.

Comfort mode

Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Normal mode

The Normal mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

The Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Traction mode

Traction mode is suitable for driving on slippery roads for vehicles with a 4x4 drive. Power is distributed optimally between the front and the rear axle.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

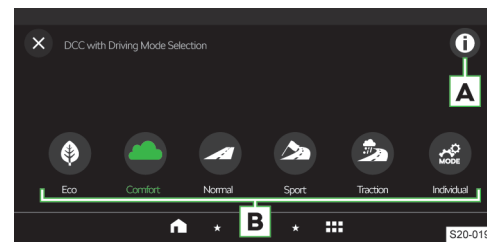
Operation

Selecting driving mode

› Press the MODE button.

The Infotainment system will display the driving mode menu.

Press repeatedly the MODE button to close the menu.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode / System settings when Individual mode is selected.

B Driving modes menu

› Press the corresponding **B** button.

When the ignition is switched on, the Normal mode is automatically selected for legislative reasons.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive DCC suspension faulty

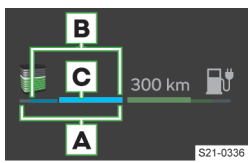
illuminates together with ⚠

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Energy recovery

Display of the recuperation process

Language is set in the instrument cluster display under the menu item



- **A** Maximum recuperation status
- **B** Currently available recuperation status
- **C** Current recuperation status

The mileage range available in the display is described in the chapter mileage availability » *page 233*.

Usage

The energy generated during braking is stored in the high-voltage battery during recuperation. A higher recuperation level also increases the braking force when the accelerator pedal is released.

Operation

Automatic recuperation

The automatic recuperation adjusts the power of the recuperation braking to the current driving situation.

› Select the **D** mode of automatic transmission.

› Activate the Eco assistant » *page 217*.

In the instrument cluster display A**D** is displayed.

Pressing the rocker switch **−** or **+** on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual selection of the recuperation level. Automatic recuperation is activated again by pressing the accelerator pedal.

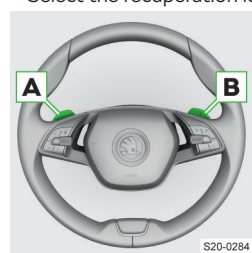
Automatic recuperation can also be carried out in the **B** mode of the automatic transmission with the ACC switched on. In the instrument cluster A**B** is displayed.

Select the recuperation level

› Select the **D** mode of automatic transmission.

› Deactivate the Eco assistant » *page 217*.

› Select the recuperation level with the shift paddles.



- **A** Choose a higher recuperation level
- **B** Choose a lower recuperation level

If no recuperation level is selected, the vehicle will move without recuperation braking after releasing the accelerator pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

D lights up - light recuperation

D lights up - medium recuperation

D lights up - strong recuperation

AD lights up - automatic recuperation

The higher the charging status of the high-voltage battery, the lower the power of the recuperation braking.

The recuperation can also be done when pressing the brake pedal.

Troubleshooting

Recuperation error

illuminates together with
Message regarding a recuperation fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
› Use driving mode ECO » page 187.
› Use the B mode of the automatic transmission to decelerate. This will charge the high-voltage battery.
› Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 276.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

ⓘ NOTICE

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

› Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
› For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
› Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

› A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
› Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
› If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
› Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

› Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
› Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
› Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a]	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
109 kW electric motor	-	-
132 kW electric motor	1000	750
150 kW electric motor	1000	750
195 kW electric motor	1200	750
220 kW electric motor	1200	750

[a] With gradients up to 12 %.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Conditions for towing

✓ The technical condition of the vehicle enables the towing process.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The automatic transmission **N** mode is selected.

Restriction

› Towing speed max. 50 km/h
› Towing distance max. 50 km

Towing eye

Removing the front cap



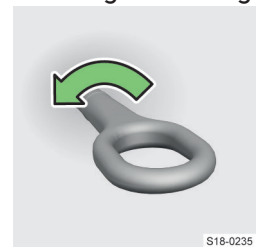
› Press on the cap and remove it.

Removing the rear cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye



› Screw in the towing eye.
› Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
› Tighten the towing eye.

After towing

› Unscrew the towing eye.
› Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specifics of the towing process.

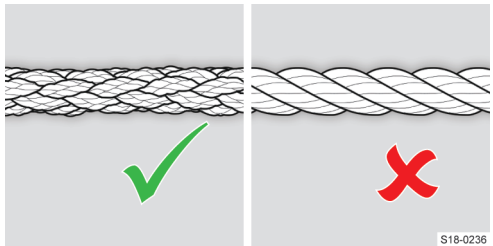
⚠ WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering are not operational. The steering lock may also engage.

› The ignition must be switched on when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ WARNING

› The tow rope must not be twisted.
› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.



ⓘ NOTICE

› The ignition must be switched on when the vehicle is being towed.
› Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.
› The vehicle must not be towed with the axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

› On the front towing eye
› On the rear towing eye
› On the tow bar fitted from the factory

🛈 Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

› Drive slowly and smoothly.
› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

› Select the **N** automatic gearbox mode.

Transportation by tow truck

The vehicle must have all wheels on the tow truck.

ⓘ NOTICE

In an emergency situation, you can tow or push the vehicle towards the tow truck at walking speed and up to a distance of 100 m.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Danger of the brakes overheating!

› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

ⓘ NOTICE

The vehicle uses for braking in mode **D** or **B** especially the regenerative braking. With this, the vehicle is braked mainly by the braking force of the electric motor. Since there is no stress on the brake system, corrosion can occur on the brake discs.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic **N** conditions allow it. The vehicle does not use regenerative braking in this mode.

Inspecting the brake fluid level

Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
- ✓ Ignition off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
› Do not refill liquid.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of (!) is displayed in the status bar. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14.
This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low

(!) illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system fault

(!) illuminates together with (ABS)

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminated

› Drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

› If road conditions permit, clean the brakes regularly by intermittent braking with the **N** mode selected.

The brake booster does not work when the ignition is off

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle moving forward by itself!

› Always make sure the parking brake is on before leaving the car. Switching on is indicated by lighting Ⓟ on the instrument cluster and red indicator light in the parking brake switch.

⚠ WARNING

Switch lock hazard!

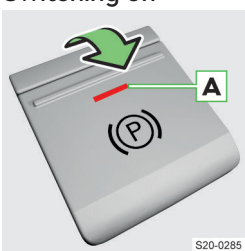
› The finger recess in front of the switch Ⓟ must remain empty.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› If the vehicle needs to move freely, in the car wash for example, make sure the parking brake is off.

Switching on



› Pull the switch Ⓟ and hold it.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, the parking brake will turn on automatically.

The indicator light A in the switch and Ⓟ on the instrument cluster illuminates.

Switching off

The parking brake is automatically deactivated when the automatic transmission mode is selected.

Deactivating the parking brake before leaving the vehicle

If it is necessary to allow the vehicle to move freely after you leave it, proceed as follows:

› On the infotainment, press **MENU** > > > *Exterior*.

› Select the screen with the *Brakes* item by swiping with your finger.

› Select *Brakes* > *Deactivate now*.

› Depress the brake pedal and select the mode **N** of the automatic transmission.

› Get out of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

Ⓟ illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

› Connect the 12-volt vehicle battery to a power source, such as the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

Switching on



› Pull the button Ⓟ and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

Switching off

› Release the button Ⓟ.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle

With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. AUTO HOLD lights up in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

AUTO HOLD lights up – Auto Hold is activated and ready to intervene

AUTO HOLD lights up - Vehicle is secured against rollong by Auto Hold

Automatic protection from the parking brake

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Auto Hold is activated.
- ✓ The automatic transmission **N** mode is not selected.

Settings

Activating and deactivating

The function is deactivated or activated in the Infotainment menu as follows:

› **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Brakes* .
› Select *Brakes* menu item and activate or deactivate the function.

⚠ NOTICE

Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

Electronic engine sound (e-sound)

Functionality

The e-Sound generates an electronic engine noise while driving at a speed of up to 25 km/h.

It is not possible to switch off the e-Sound.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Despite the e-sound, the vehicle does not have to be clearly audible to other road users.

Troubleshooting

e-sound failed


illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid. ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes – ESC is engaged

ESC Sport

ESC Sport enables a sportier driving style.

 illuminates – ESC Sport is activated

Traction control (ASR)

ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

 flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels of the driven axle lock, the MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)

EDS helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)

XDS+ helps to keep the vehicle on the turn by effectively braking the wheels on the inner side of the turn.

Multi-collision brake (MCB)

MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)

eBKV (electronic brake force distribution) facilitates operation of the brake pedal. At the same time, charging of the high-voltage battery is made possible through regenerative braking.

After switching off the ignition, the eBKV (electronic brake force distribution) function is either restricted or not available.

If the vehicle is decelerated using an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal can occur.

Regenerative braking

Regenerative braking produces energy that is stored in the high-voltage battery. The force of the braking effect depends on the selected driving mode, as well as the state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

During regenerative braking, pulsating movements of the brake pedal and fluctuating decelerations of the vehicle can occur.

Settings

Activating/deactivating ESC Sport

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment.

In the displayed menu in the Infotainment, the function can be deactivated or activated.

Or:

› In infotainment **MENU** > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Brakes* .
› Select *Brakes* .
› Activate or deactivate the functions.

When activated, OFF lights up in the instrument cluster.

OFF goes out when deactivated.

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

illuminates

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster faulty

illuminates

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display



illuminates – safety distance too small



illuminates – warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol is illuminated as a warning from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles. The reaction to oncoming vehicles is limited.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› About 30 seconds after starting (the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster)
› When driving around a sharp bend
› When there is an ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation and settings in the Infotainment system

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > .

- *Active* – activation/deactivation Front Assist
- *Advance warning* – activating/deactivating and setting the distance level at which the warning occurs
- *Display distance warning* – activating/deactivating the display of distance warning
- *Avoidance support* – when activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by braking and assisting steering control.
- *Turning brake function* – when activated, the system can apply the brakes at low speeds when turning to avoid collision with oncoming traffic.

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster display

illuminated

Front Assist deactivate when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available

illuminates together with ⚠

- Clean the front radar sensor.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

- Clean the front radar sensor.
- If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Front Assist

Front Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-front-assist

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing or lengthwise moving pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up – danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h

The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-85 km/h

The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 5-85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

LIM illuminates – the cruise control is activated.

LIM illuminates – the cruise control is active
flashing – the set threshold limit has been exceeded

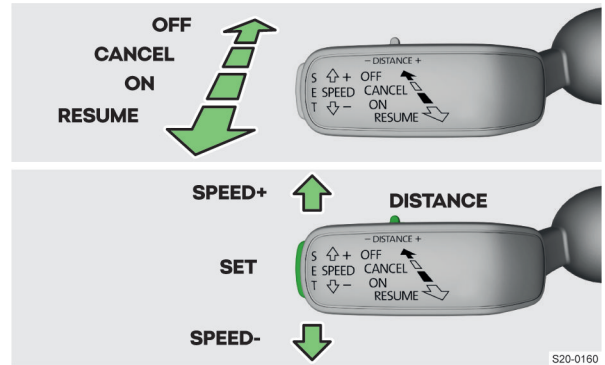
When cruise control starts, the set threshold limit is displayed.

OFF illuminates – the cruise control is deactivated.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation



ON Activating cruise control /ACC (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the speed limiter, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and select the item Speed limiter on the instrument cluster

RESUME Starting or resuming control [1] / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the limiter

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

---

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Switching between speed limiter, cruise control and ACC (depending on vehicle equipment)

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

› Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Changing the speed limit using the B button and C

Pressing in **1 km/h** increments

Holding in **10 km/h** increments

Exceeding the limit

› Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

LIM illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

› Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Illuminated – the cruise control system is activated

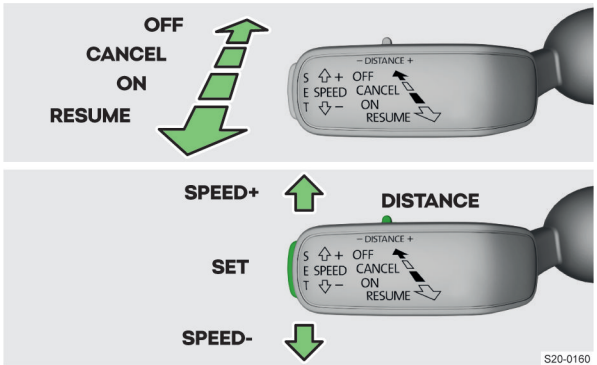
Illuminated – cruise control is active

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation



ON Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

RESUME Starting or resuming control [1] / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the cruise control

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

Switching between cruise control, ACC and speed limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

› Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed

› After ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system fault

illuminated

› Turn off the engine and start again.

› If the cruise control system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.

› If the brake lights are working and the cruise control system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

Speed control ACC

ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front of you, the ACC will automatically maintain the set distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not react to objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

🅘 ACC is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

pACC Predictive Adaptive Cruise control

pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts speed according to detected speed limits and road conditions, such as curves, junctions or roundabouts.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic sign recognition
› Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ WARNING

pACC does not react to level crossings.

Speed range

ACC allows you to adjust the speed according to the car's equipment within a range of 20– 210 km/h.

If you activate the control on a car with an automatic gearbox at a speed lower than 20 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 20 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the car in front of you.

Level of distance

You can set the distance to the car in front of you in five different levels.

⚠ WARNING

› Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.

START-STOP system

The vehicle can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again. If the stop is longer, the control is interrupted.

To restore control:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Or:

› Put the selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› *Applies to vehicles with hand detection on the steering wheel:* take hold of the steering wheel again.

Depressing the brake pedal will interrupt control.

Overtaking

If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

 illuminated – ACC is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.

OFF illuminated – ACC is deactivated

illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit

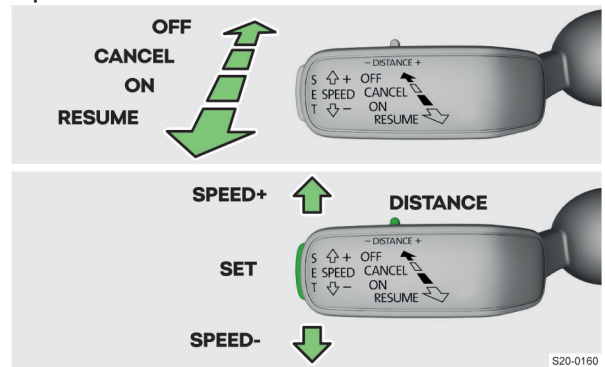
illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey

Operation

Operation with the lever



ON	Activating ACC (no cruise control is in operation)
RESUME	Starting or resuming control / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)
CANCEL	Interrupting control (sprung position)
OFF	ACC deactivation
SPEED +	Increasing the speed in 10 km/h steps
SPEED –	Decreasing the speed in 10 km/h steps
DISTANCE	Setting the distance level
SET	Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Switching between ACC, cruise control and speed limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
› Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

Starting the current speed control

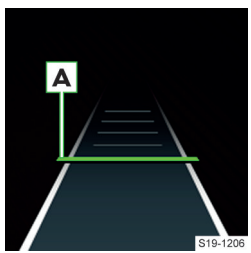
› Tap **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Setting the distance level

› Move the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



The display will show A line indicating change of distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The car accelerates, the control is temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator pedal is released, control is restored.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed
› After ESC or ASR intervention

Resuming the control

› If no speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the set speed. The set speed is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

Do not use the ACC in the following cases:

› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.
› The vehicle drives through a construction site.

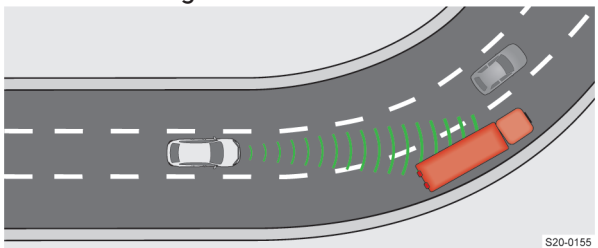
⚠ WARNING

› Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

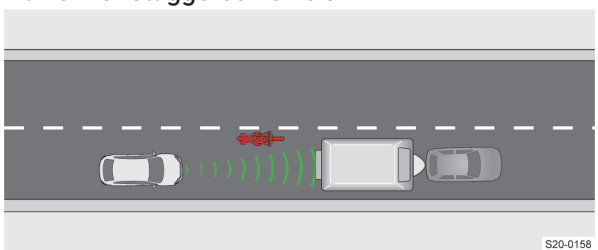
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



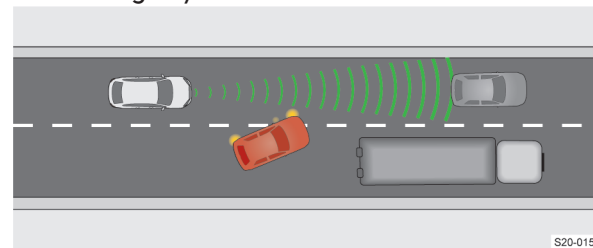
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



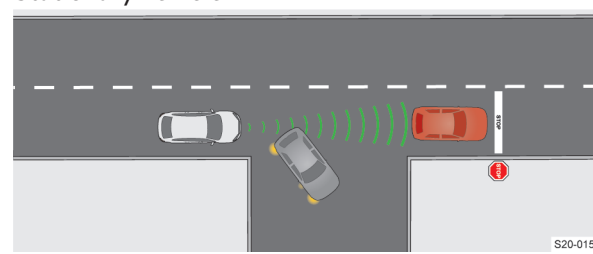
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be possibly recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC **may not possibly respond** to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

In the MENU > > *All assist systems* > menu.

- *Driving profile:* – setting the vehicle acceleration when driving with ACC (in vehicles with a selection of driving modes, this setting is made by » *page 187*)
- *Last selected distance* – turning on/off of the last selected distance level
- *Distance:* – setting the default distance from the vehicle in front of you
- *Prediction of the course of the journey* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
- *Prediction of the speed limit* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

ACC - setting

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-predictive-acc

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

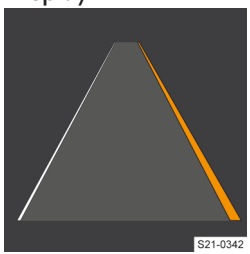
Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, if Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle using the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover, then the system intervenes even if the turn signal is switched on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up – System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up – System intervenes

Display



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations

The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations:

- The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.
- *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on.
- *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle using the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover, then a steering wheel vibration is triggered even when the turn signal is switched off.
- Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- ✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- When the driving lane is too narrow.
- The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Deactivating/activating the system

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

The system can also be activated/deactivated in the control centre » page 123 or in the Infotainment system favourite functions » page 118, if the Lane Assist button is set.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibrations

In the MENU > > *All assist systems* > menu.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
- Switch the ignition off and on again after a short time.
- If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Lane Assist Lane Assist

Lane Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-lane-assist

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed.

On vehicles with Side Assist and Smart Parking Assist, it also helps you change lanes.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses Lane Assist, ACC and Side Assist functions (depending on vehicle equipment).

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.
- Follow the instructions in the description of the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

Status display on the instrument cluster display


illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress


Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress


illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress


illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering


illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Travel Assist using shared online data

For a better evaluation of the situation, the system uses data shared with other vehicles (depending on the vehicle equipment, this function may not be available in the vehicle and in the given market).

To use shared data, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ Travel Assist is activated.
- ✓ *Online mode (with position sharing)* **» page 173** is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.

Assisted lane change

Applies to vehicles with Side Assist and Smart Parking Assist.

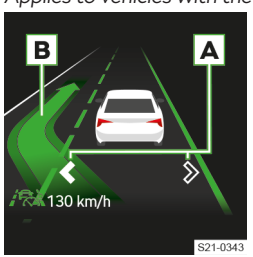
This function allows you to automatically change lanes by moving the turn signal lever to the sprung position.

The function is designed for driving on motorways.

To activate the function, Travel Assist must be reactivated when driving on the motorway.

Display view

Applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.



A The arrows showing the status of the Assisted Lane Change.

- › Full arrow - you can change lanes in the direction of the arrow. The adjacent lane will be highlighted.
- › Contour arrow - it is not possible to change the lane in the direction of the arrow.

B Lane marked during the overtaking manoeuvre.

If the system determines that it is safe to change lanes, the display will show a solid arrow pointing in that direction.

- › Move the direction indicator lever to the sprung position. The vehicle will change lanes.

Operating conditions

Applies to vehicles without the Assisted Lane Change function.

- ✓ ACC is activated.
- ✓ Driving speed is max. 210 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.

- ✓ ACC is activated.
- ✓ Side Assist is activated.
- ✓ The Assisted Lane Change function is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling on the motorway.
- ✓ Travel Assist has been activated or reactivated when driving on the motorway.
- ✓ The driving speed is 90 – 210 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Function restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these restrictions, also note the ACC restrictions » page 206.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

› Put the ACC selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Activation/deactivation of Assisted lane change

The function can be activated/deactivated only in the Infotainment system menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assist systems* > .

Switching between Travel Assist and ACC

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
› Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

ⓘ After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC selector lever to **CANCEL** position or **OFF** » page 205.

ⓘ Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » page 210 and ACC » page 208.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

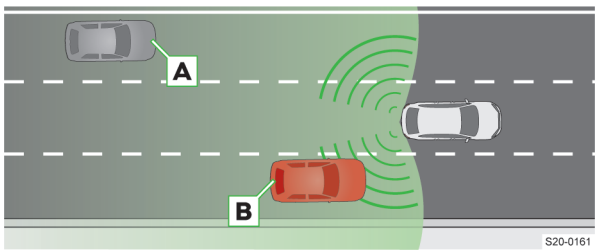
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side, where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster vehicle A approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** – There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashes** – There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases:

› The vehicle is driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.

› The vehicle is taking a turn.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of a vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.

› A very fast approaching vehicle.

› The vehicle is driving through a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Lane change system Side Assist

Side Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-side-assist

Traffic Sign Recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING

The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:

› Traffic signs in the traveled route section

› A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Displayed road signs

› Speed limits

› Overtaking prohibited

› Driving bans – one-way traffic

› Danger sign

› Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits

If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display



Speed units

The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.

› The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.

› The vehicle is moving at high speed.

› The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.

› The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.

› The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

In the MENU > > *All assist systems* > menu.

- *Traffic sign recognition*
  - › *Speeding alert:* – setting an alert when speeding
  - › *Alert at more than*– increasing the speed limit for the speeding warning
  - › *Include trailer* – deactivating/activating the display of traffic signs valid for driving with a trailer
  - › *Maximum speed for trailer* – setting maximum speed for driving with a trailer

Crew Protect Assist

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, it triggers the following safety measures:

› The hazard warning lights are switched on.
› Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
› The sliding/tilting roof is closed.
› The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

The system response depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of frontal impact

Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a frontal impact.

Driver inactivity hazard

Applies to vehicles with assist systems for emergency situations.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger if the driver is inactive.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› When reversing
› If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system
› If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system
› If there is a malfunction or restriction of the Emergency Assist emergency assist systems

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the following symbol lights up ♨ from the isolation box.

⚠ WARNING

There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

› The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off
› The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened
› The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes

🛈 In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > ♨.

Emergency situation assist system Emergency Assist

Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

› An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
› If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
› After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on. Depending on the equipment, an emergency call can be initiated.

Interruption of automatic braking

› By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal
› By actively steering

Operating conditions

✓ Assist system for emergency situations is activated.
✓ Lane Assist or Travel Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.

Settings

Automatic activation

The Assistant is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > SOS.

Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

Usage

Eco Assist supports an economical driving style with the help of instructions in the display of the instrument cluster.

Functionality

When the system detects that it is possible to drive more economically, the following information is shown in the display of the instrument cluster:

› Symbol of an approaching event, e.g. speed limit, intersection etc.

› – Recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

After releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle adapts the driving speed and recuperation to the current situation.

Pressing the rocker switch **–** or **+** on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual selection of the recuperation level. Automatic recuperation is activated again by pressing the accelerator pedal » *page 188*.

The system uses the following sources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data

› Traffic Sign Recognition

› Sensors, radars and cameras

Function restriction

The function cannot be used in the following cases:

› If the automatic distance control (ACC) is activated

› If the cruise control system is activated

› If the Sport driving mode is selected

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system display and an acoustic signal sounds.

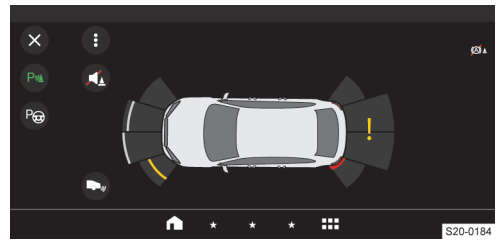
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

The automatic braking can be activated and deactivated on the Infotainment system display.

Display

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



- Switching off/on the audible alarm
- One-off deactivation/activation of automatic braking
- Park steering assistant
- Setting up some parking assist systems
- ! System fault
- Switching to reversing camera view

- Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres
- Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres
- Obstacle outside the driving path

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/turn off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button.

Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an obstacle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The detected obstacles are moving.
› Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
› It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings menu is displayed as follows:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > ⋮ > ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear > in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ⋮ > ⚙.

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen

› Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.
› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

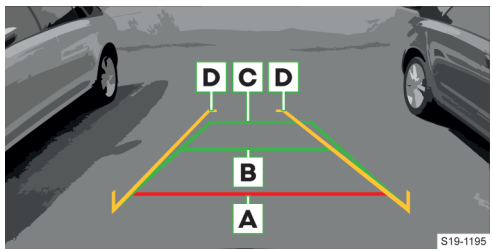
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

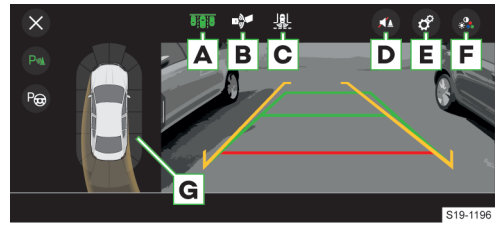
Orientation lines and function surfaces

Orientation lines



- **A** Distance about 40 cm
- **B** Distance about 100 cm
- **C** Distance about 200 cm
- **D** The lines show the driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel rotation. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **C** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **D** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on
- **E** Setting the parking aid system
- **F** Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the image
- **G** Parking aid preview

Full parking aid display can be activated by tapping the preview.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

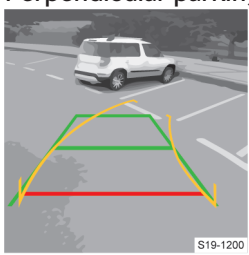
Switching on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment > P on the Infotainment display.

Perpendicular parking mode



› Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
› Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking gap.
› Stop at the latest when the red line reaches the rear boundary (e.g. kerb).

Manoeuvring to the trailer mode

On a vehicle with a factory fitted towing device, this mode helps to guide the vehicle towards the trailer's draw bar. The display shows the track line for guiding to the trailer.

Rear view mode

The display shows the area behind the vehicle in a wide-angle view.

Switching off the system

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Tap ✕ on the Infotainment system display.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed on the screen.

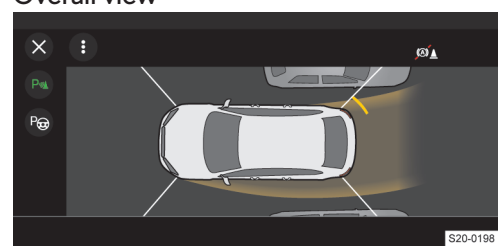
Area View, Top View

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

Overview

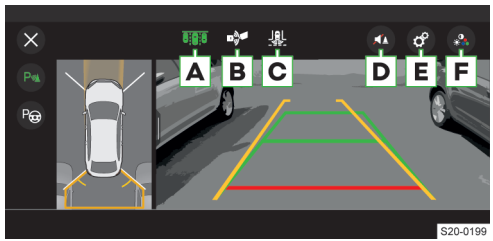
Overall view



Selecting the view

Select the view by touching the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette on the Infotainment system display. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the display.

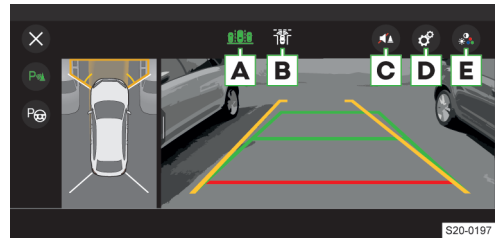
Rear camera view



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **C** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **D** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on
- **E** Setting the parking aid system
- **F** Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the image

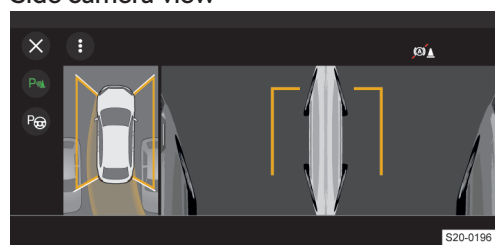
Front camera view



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Front view mode (wide-angle view)
- **C** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on
- **D** Setting the parking aid system
- **E** Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the image

Side camera view



Left and right-hand side.

The yellow line is displayed approximately 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > P and tap the Infotainment screen.

Selecting the camera image

› In infotainment, tap the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Switching off

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap the functional surface ✕ on the Infotainment screen.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

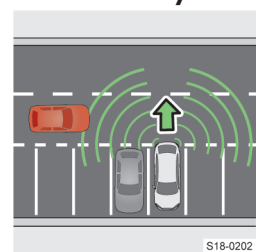
Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

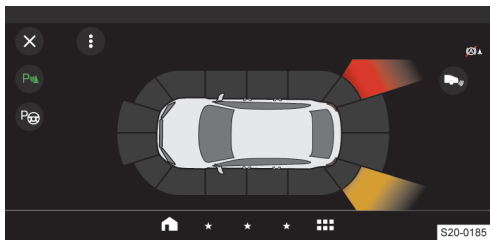


When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

System displays

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. When reversing, a continuous tone sounds at the same time.



- Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!
- Approaching vehicle

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

The activation/deactivation menu will be displayed as follows:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.

› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear > in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ⋮ > ⚙.

› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exit warning

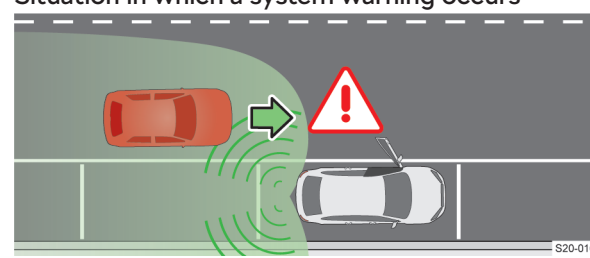
Usage

The assist system warns when opening the door in front of approaching objects, in order to avoid a possible collision.

Functionality

The assist system monitors the area beside and behind the vehicle up to a distance of approximately 35 m.

Situation in which a system warning occurs



Warning in the event of an impending collision

› The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will flicker and then light up.
› A warning signal sounds.

Warning in the event there is no immediate danger of collision

› The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will light up.

Requirements

✓ The vehicle does not move.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The speed of the approaching object is faster than 2 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

After switching off the ignition, the assistant will remain active for about 3 minutes.

Restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an approaching object, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The field of vision of the sensors is limited by an obstacle.
› A very fast approaching object.

Settings

To display the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > and tap the Infotainment screen.
› Select the Exit Indicator menu item.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear > in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ⋮ > .
› Select the Exit Indicator menu item.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Intelligent park steering assistant

Usage

The assist system is intended to automatically park the vehicle in a row of vehicles parked lengthways or crossways.

Functionality

Functions of the intelligent park steering assistant:

› Search for suitable parking spaces.
› Automatic reverse parking into a parallel or perpendicular parking space.
› Automatic forward parking into a perpendicular parking space.
› Forward parking out of a parallel parking space.

The system automatically takes over steering of the vehicle when parking or leaving a parking space.

The system displays information and notes on the Infotainment display.

If the system detects a risk of impact during the parking, automatic emergency braking is applied to reduce the consequences of any collision.

Operating conditions

- ✓ ASR does not engage.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Turn on/turn off

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the Infotainment screen P.

Searching for a parking space

› Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.

› To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.

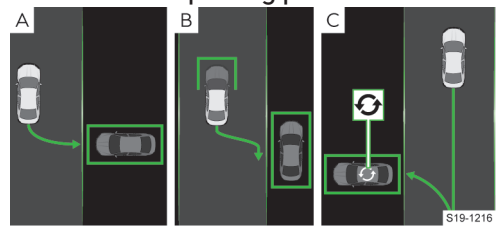
› To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

Before the parking process

› When a suitable parking space is found, stop and follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen.

› If the system offers several parking spaces, select the desired parking space by tapping on the Infotainment screen.

Variants of the parking procedure



A Park backwards crosswise

B Park backwards longitudinally

C Park forwards across

↻ Touch the symbol – change park mode

Parking operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

› Tap the functional surface *Start* on the Infotainment screen.

› Pay attention to the area around the vehicle and follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen.

i The parking process can be interrupted at any time by pressing the brake pedal for less than 10 s. After releasing the brake pedal, the parking process continues.

End the parking process

The parking procedure can be switched off in one of the following ways at any time:

- By pressing the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment
- By tapping the symbol ✕ in the Infotainment screen
- Through a steering intervention
- By pressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 s

Park automatically without searching for a parking space beforehand

Park forwards:

- Partially park forward into a suitable transverse parking space.
- Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.
- Follow the instructions on the screen.

Park backwards:

- Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.
- Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.
- Follow the instructions on the screen.

Exiting a parking space

- Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.
- Follow the instructions on the screen.

Function restriction

In some countries, the intelligent park steering assistant is restricted for legal reasons.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. The respective message appears on the Infotainment screen.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
- Snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
- If the system offers an inappropriate parking space for parking.
- The overhang angle for parking in the parking space is too large.
- The system may not be able to correctly detect the obstacles:
  - The obstacles are moving.
  - Sensor signals are not reflected from the surface of the obstacles, e.g. fabrics, foams, thin foils.
  - The obstacles are small in size, e.g a stone or a narrow column
  - An obstacle that is higher than 20 cm can abort the process.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant with memory function

Usage

The assist system is intended to automatically park the vehicle over a previously saved route in a parking lot, e.g. in front of the garage, in the garden, in front of the house, etc.

Functionality

The park steering assistant with memory function enables the storage of a maximum of 5 parking spaces, where one can park in or out of these several times automatically.

The system saves the position and the name of the parking space.

When parking in or out of the saved parking space, the system automatically takes over vehicle steering.

The system displays information and notes on the Infotainment display.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

- ✓ ASR does not engage.
- ✓ The GPS signal is available.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

Turn on/turn off

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the Infotainment screen P.

Save parking space

› Park the vehicle.

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake and leave ignition on.

› Press the button P ASSIST below the Infotainment and then tap ★ on the Infotainment screen.

› Name and save the parking space using the keyboard that is displayed.

Park in the saved parking space

› Approach the parking space at a maximum distance of 70 m from the saved parking space at a speed of less than 45 km/h.

› As soon as the track to the saved parking space is recognized by the system, follow the instructions on the infotainment screen.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

Park out of the saved parking space

› Turn on the ignition.

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment and follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

End the parking process

The parking procedure can be switched off in one of the following ways at any time:

- By pressing the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment
- By tapping the symbol ✕ in the Infotainment screen
- Through a steering intervention
- By pressing the brake pedal for longer than 10 s

The parking process can be interrupted at any time by pressing the brake pedal for less than 10 s. After releasing the brake pedal, the parking process continues.

Function restriction

In some countries, the park steering assistant with memory function is not available for legal reasons.

If it is not possible to park using the park steering assistant with memory function, the corresponding message is displayed on the Infotainment screen.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
- Snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
- If the system offers an inappropriate parking space for parking.
- The overhang angle for parking in the parking space is too large.
- The system may not be able to correctly detect the obstacles:
  - The obstacles are moving.
  - Sensor signals are not reflected from the surface of the obstacles, e.g. fabrics, foams, thin foils.
  - The obstacles are small in size, e.g a stone or a narrow column.
  - An obstacle that is higher than 20 cm can abort the process.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

High-voltage system

High-voltage system and high-voltage battery

What you should be mindful of

High-voltage warning labels



Warning labels are placed on components with high electrical voltages.

⚠ DANGER

Improper handling of the high-voltage system and battery can cause fatal electric shock, burns, or injury.

› Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and the high-voltage system is energized. This applies even when the electric drive is switched off and the ignition is switched off.
› Do not touch or handle the components of the high-voltage system. These include, for example, the high-voltage cables and the high-voltage battery.
› Do not carry out any work on the high-voltage system and battery.
› Only qualified service technicians may work on the high-voltage system and systems affected by it.
› Do not open or repair components of the high-voltage system.
› Do not modify, disassemble or disconnect orange high-voltage cables.
› Do not open, modify or disassemble the high-voltage battery cover.
› Damage to the vehicle or the high-voltage battery may result in the release of toxic and flammable gases. Open the windows to vent escaping gases and leave the vehicle.
› Avoid contact with liquids and gases escaping from the high-voltage battery.
› In case of fire, leave the vehicle and keep a safe distance. Inform the emergency services that the vehicle has a high-voltage battery » *page 37, After an accident*.

⚠ CAUTION

The high-voltage battery can be damaged if the chassis is struck on the road or in an accident, for example.

› Have the high-voltage battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time with a discharged high-voltage battery, the high-voltage battery may be irreversibly damaged.

› A discharged high-voltage battery must be charged immediately!

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle is left off the road for several months, the high-voltage battery may self-discharge.
This can lead to damage to the high-voltage battery at high ambient temperatures and low state of charge.

› Always ensure a sufficient state of charge of the high-voltage battery!

Overview of the high-voltage system

The high-voltage system in the vehicle consists of the following main components:

› High-voltage battery
› DCDC converter
› Power electronics
› Electric motor
› High-voltage air conditioning compressor
› High-voltage battery charger
› Charging socket
› Orange high-voltage cables and connectors
› High-voltage heater

ⓘ The high-voltage battery is located under the floor of the vehicle and is not accessible to the user.

Troubleshooting

High temperature of the high-voltage battery - fire hazard!



illuminated
Fire hazard report, continuous acoustic warning

› Do not continue driving!
› Park the vehicle in a safe place, well away from buildings, other vehicles and flammable objects.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Exit the vehicle and make sure that no persons or animals are left in the vehicle.
› Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the accident immediately to the emergency services and indicate that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!
In case of fire, poisonous and inflammable gases may be released. Components of the high-voltage system may be live.

› Leave the vehicle and stay well away from it.

The continuous acoustic warning can only be deactivated by a specialist garage. We recommend that you have it deactivated by a ŠKODA service partner.

Electric drive system fault



illuminated
Message indicating an electric drive system fault

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.



illuminated
Message indicating an electric drive system fault

› Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Overheated electrical system



illuminates together with 
Message indicating overheating of the electrical system

› Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the ignition.
› Do not top up the coolant!
› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault in the engine control system

EPC illuminated

› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Range

What affects the range

The range depends mainly on the driving style and the selected driving mode. It is therefore recommended not to drive too fast and not to accelerate too rapidly » page 189.

It also depends on the climatic conditions and on the way the comfort appliances are used, especially the air conditioning.

Therefore it is recommended that, especially in cold weather, the vehicle is parked in a garage or the interior temperature of the vehicle is raised in one of the following ways before driving to reduce the consumption of comfort appliances at the start of the journey:

› Set up delayed charging with interior preheating » page 244.
› Set the interior to preheat with independent air conditioning if the vehicle cannot be connected to the mains » page 106.

ⓘ Please note that in order to accurately estimate your vehicle's range, you must first teach it your driving style and habits.

› It is therefore recommended that you first drive the new vehicle for about 500 km in your usual driving style. This will give the vehicle enough information to make a more accurate estimate of the range shown on the instrument cluster display.

How best to find out the range

Plan your journey wisely. Use the range calculator on the ŠKODA website.

Using the data you enter, such as the season, the desired interior temperature or the expected driving style, you can conveniently find out the range for your planned journey.

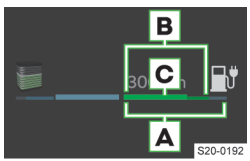
https://go.skoda.eu/range-calculator

Available mileage

Functionality

Display of mileage availability

The mileage availability is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.



- **A** Highest possible performance
- **B** Currently available highest performance
- **C** Currently used performance

ⓘ The recuperation range available in the display is described in the chapter Recuperation *» page 188*.

Restrictions

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Adapt your driving style to the available driving power and the state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

Applies to vehicles with 109, 132 and 150 kW electric motors.

The availability of maximum vehicle power may be limited.

By limiting the driving power, if necessary, the high-voltage battery is protected against excessive wear.

The amount of energy available in each driving situation depends, for example, on the following factors:

› Ambient temperature

› Charge level

› High-voltage battery temperature

› High-voltage battery wear

Applies to vehicles with 195 and 220 kW electric motors.

Maximum power is available for up to 30 seconds, calculated in accordance with UN GTR.21.

The power available in different driving situations depends, for example, on the following factors:

› Ambient temperature

› Charge level

› High-voltage battery temperature

› High-voltage battery wear

For maximum power to be available, the temperature of the high voltage battery must be within 23– 50 °C and the state of charge must be higher than 88 %.

Deviations from the above parameters may result in a temporary reduction in maximum power or its complete unavailability.

The battery temperature may be indirectly affected by the auxiliary air conditioner and the charge level may be set by the user in the vehicle.

The currently available maximum power is displayed in the instrument cluster.

To preserve the usable capacity of the high-voltage battery as much as possible, it is recommended to charge the battery as follows:

› to 80 % of capacity if the car is used daily

› to 100 % capacity for longer distance driving

Troubleshooting

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
With limited or insufficient driving performance, the speed, acceleration and several comfort functions, e.g. B. the air conditioning may be limited.

Limited mileage


illuminates
The mileage is limited due to the low state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

› The high-voltage battery is charging.

Inadequate mileage


illuminates
The driving performance is insufficient due to the very low state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

› The high-voltage battery is charging.

Charging

General information on charging

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of fatal electric shock, burns or injury!

- Follow the correct charging procedure. Do not disconnect the charging cable during charging.
- When operating a charging station, follow the instructions provided on the charging station.
- Never charge in places where there is a risk of explosion. Components of the charging cable can cause sparks and thus ignite explosive fumes.
- Only charge from professionally installed and undamaged electrical sockets in a faultless wiring system. Have the electrical sockets and wiring checked regularly.
- Connect the charging cable to an electrical outlet that is protected from moisture and liquids.
- Do not use the charging cable together with an extension cord, multiple outlet, adapter or timer.
- Do not use damaged charging connectors and cables.
- Protect the connectors of charging cables and power sockets from moisture and liquids.
- Do not work on the vehicle while it is being charged.
- Always disconnect the charging cable before switching on the ignition. Replace the protective cap and close the vehicle's charging socket cover.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fire and damage to the vehicle!

- Do not charge several vehicles at the same time from one socket circuit.
- Ensure that the maximum power load capacity of the socket circuit is observed. If other appliances draw power from the same socket circuit while charging, the socket circuit may be overloaded and the charging process may be terminated.

🛈 During charging, functions that reduce the charging rate, such as air conditioning or seat heating, may be unavailable or limited.

Overview

Charging options

- Public charging station (alternating current AC) » page 241

› Fast charging from a public charging station (direct current DC) » page 242
› Home charging station – Wallbox (alternating current AC) » page 241
› Charging from a standard or industrial outlet » page 241

Home charging stations (Wallbox) and a universal charging cable

When charging from a home charging station or using a universal charging cable » page 248, higher charging power and significantly shorter charging times are achieved compared to charging from a conventional socket.

For information on how to purchase a suitable home charging station (Wallbox) or a universal charging cable, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

NOTICE

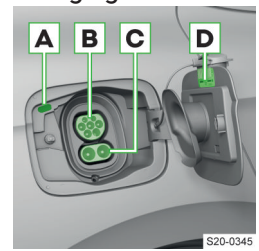
The installation of the home charging station (Wallbox) must be carried out by a qualified technician.
› Before installing the home charging station, have your wiring checked.
› Have the wiring and the home charging station checked regularly by a qualified technician.

Home charging

Use the tool to get an overview of home charging on the ŠKODA website.

https://go.skoda.eu/home-charging

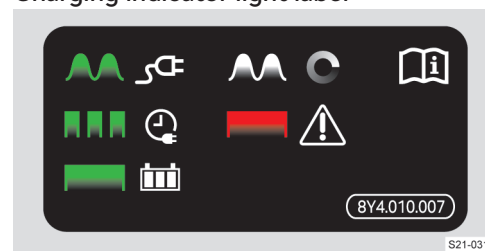
Charging socket and indicator light



A Charging indicator light
B Charging socket (alternating current AC)
C Charging socket (direct current DC)
D Labels:
› Charging indicator light label
› Charging compatibility information label » page 240

The indicator light is also used to illuminate the charging socket.

Charging indicator light label



High-voltage battery is being charged
Indicator light pulses in green

Postponed charging activated, charging has not yet started
Indicator light flashes in green

High-voltage battery is charged, charging has been terminated

Indicator light is green

The connector has been plugged into the charging socket and the connection between the vehicle and the charging point is being established

Indicator light pulses in white

⚠ A problem detected » page 238

Indicator light is red

Recommended charging instructions

The high-voltage battery is subject to natural ageing and wear during use. Proper handling helps to maintain capacity and life over the long term. It is therefore recommended to observe the following instructions:

› If possible, charge the high-voltage battery in daily use to 80 %. You can set the upper charge limit in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system or by using the Battery Care Mode function » page 244.

› Only charge the high-voltage battery to 100 % before a long journey. To do this, use delayed charging (charging for the time of departure) » page 244. Once fully charged, drive off as soon as possible.

› Avoid leaving the vehicle idle for long periods of time when the high-voltage battery has a high level of charge.

› If the vehicle will be parked for a long period of time, leave the high-voltage battery charged from 40 % up to 70 %.

› Avoid completely discharging the high-voltage battery, e.g. due to long periods of leaving the vehicle idle with a low state of charge. Set the lower battery charge limit to at least 20 %.

› Charge the high-voltage battery mainly with alternating current (AC).

When fast charging with direct current (DC), the charging power is very high. Frequent fast charging (DC) can permanently reduce the capacity of a high-voltage battery.

› If possible, avoid leaving the vehicle in high outside temperatures for long periods, especially in direct sunlight.

ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to follow these recommendations will result in increased ageing and wear of the high-voltage battery.

Charging time

Charging time depends on:

› Climatic conditions

› High-voltage battery temperature

› High-voltage battery charge status

› Charging power supplied by the charging station or an electrical outlet

Due to the physical characteristics of the high-voltage battery, its ability to store energy changes and the charging slows down in the following cases:

› During prolonged parking in very cold climatic conditions

› As the level of charging increases

How fast and where you can charge

Use the tool to get an overview of charging times and public charging stations on the ŠKODA website.

https://go.skoda.eu/chargingcalculator

Tips for faster charging

If the charge level of the high-voltage battery is low after the ride, we recommend starting charging immediately after the ride.

We recommend charging from a charging station where no other vehicle is being charged.

The first charging and charging after a long period of idling

If the high-voltage battery is new or has not been charged for a long time, the maximum state of charge can only be reached after repeated charging. There is a technical reason for this, it is not a fault.

If the vehicle is parked for a long time in a very cold environment, we recommend charging the high-voltage battery to at least 40 %.

NOTICE

Risk of irreversible damage to the high voltage battery.

› If you do not use the vehicle for an extended period of time, charge the high-voltage battery after four months at the latest.

Troubleshooting

Problems signalled by the indicator light in the vehicle's charging socket

illuminated/pulsing
Charging does not start or charge level does not increase.

› Check the charging status on the main charging settings screen in the Infotainment system » *page 244*, to see if the set upper charge limit has already been reached.

› Set a new upper limit and restart the charging process.

flashing
Charging does not start or charge level does not increase.

› Check that the delayed charging function is not active » *page 246*.

› If you want to start charging immediately, deactivate the function.

illuminated
Charging has been terminated manually.

› Start the charging process again.

flashing
The initialization of the charging process is in progress.

› Wait for charging to start.

illuminated

› Check the following specifications:

› The charging station or cable is connected to the mains and does not indicate any warnings or error messages.

› You are properly authorized if the charging station requires it.

› The cable is connected and properly secured in the charging socket.

› The vehicle does not indicate any error messages related to the high-voltage system.

› Unplug the connector and reinsert it into the socket as far as it goes.
› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.



pulses green three times and then red once
Due to a fault, the connector in the charging socket is not secured and the vehicle is being charged in an emergency with a significantly lower charging current.

› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Low charge level of the high-voltage battery



illuminated

› Charge the high-voltage battery.

Charging does not start or is interrupted

A message is displayed stating that charging is not possible.

› Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and reconnect it.

Or:

› Use another charging option.
› If charging does not start or is interrupted again, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Fast charging with DC current is not possible

A message is displayed stating that fast charging is not possible.

› Charge the high-voltage battery with AC current.
› Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Charging time is extended

If the high-voltage battery is too hot after driving, the system can reduce the charging current during subsequent charging to protect the high-voltage battery from overheating. This will increase the charging time.

› Make sure that the charging (AC) current is not set to a reduced level in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 244, or in the Wallbox charging device, universal charging cable.
› Check that emergency charging AC is not active.

Charging is terminated unexpectedly

› Check the charging status on the main charging settings screen in the Infotainment system » page 244, to see if the set upper charge limit has already been reached.
› In the event of an error message, check the charging station or try another charging station.

The connector cannot be detached

The connector is too hot.

› Wait for the connector to cool down.

Or:

The locking mechanism of the charging socket has failed.

› Release the charging cable using the mechanical release » page 240.
› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ In the event of persistent problems, contact a professional service centre.

Mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket

If the connector remains locked in the charging socket after charging has been completed and the button has been pressed, proceed as follows:

› Check that charging is interrupted.
› Open the boot lid.



› Press with your fingers on the perforated part on the right-hand side of the inner luggage compartment lining.
› Pull the perforated part outwards.

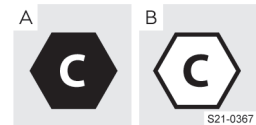


› To release the connector, carefully pull the lug in the direction of the arrow.
› Then pull the connector out of the charging socket.
› Have the vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

Information labels

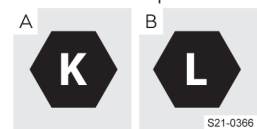
The information label informs about the compatibility of the charging components of the vehicle and the charging point.



Connector type designation for AC charging.

A A label on the vehicle and on the connector of the charging cable that plugs into the vehicle

B A label on the charging station and on the connector of the charging cable that plugs into the charging station (if the cable is not part of the charging station)



Designation of the type of DC charging connector on the vehicle and on the charging cable connector

A Voltage up to 500 V
B Voltage up to 1,000 V

High-voltage battery capacity

With respect to the technology used, the nominal (gross) capacity of the high-voltage battery is always higher than the total usable (net) capacity.

Charging with alternating current (AC)

Operation

Charging with alternating current (AC) takes place when charging from Wallbox home charging stations, public charging stations or from normal electrical outlets.

Before charging

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.

› Switch off the ignition.

Switched on ignition can increase the charging time.

› Fully unwind the charging station cable.

Or:

› Fully unwind the charging cable and plug it into a charging socket or a normal/industrial socket.

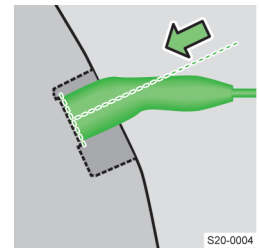
Connecting the charging cable

› Unlock the vehicle. The cover of the charging socket will be released.



› Push on the charging socket cover and lift it open.

The indicator light in the charging socket lights up white.



› Insert the charging cable connector into the charging socket.

› Make sure the connector in the charging socket is inserted straight and all the way in.

The connector will automatically lock in the socket. The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Starting the charging process

Charging starts automatically when the charging cable is connected.

Or:

› If required, start charging on the charging station.

The indicator light in the charging socket pulses green. The display in the instrument cluster shows the remaining charging time and flashes.

Interrupting charging and restarting charging

› Press the button for terminating charging immediately in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 244.

Charging is interrupted. The connector remains secured in the charging socket.

› To restart charging, tap the instant start button in the Infotainment system again » page 244.

Charging automatically stops

When the upper charge limit of the battery is reached, charging stops automatically. When the automatic release option for the

charging cable connector is selected » page 244 the connector is released and remains unlocked. Otherwise, it remains locked and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key.

Manual termination of charging

› Press the button on the key.

Charging is interrupted, the connector is unlocked for 30 seconds and can be removed.

After 30 seconds, the connector will re-lock and if the upper battery charge limit has not been reached, charging will continue.

Or:

› To terminate charging at the charging station, follow the instructions on the station.

The connector remains locked in the charging socket and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key.

The indicator light in the charging socket lights green.

After charging

› If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key will release it.

› Pull the connector out of the charging socket.

› Close the charging socket cover.

› Alternatively, remove the charging cable from the charging device or from the power socket.

If you leave the charging cable plugged in after charging is completed, the appliances in the car do not discharge the high-voltage battery but are powered by the charging device.

Charging with direct current (DC)

Operation

Charging with direct current (DC) is possible at public charging stations. When charging, a higher charging power is achieved and the charging time is significantly reduced.

Before charging

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.

› Switch off the ignition.

Switched on ignition can increase the charging time.

› Fully unwind the charging station cable.

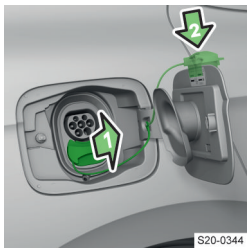
Connecting the charging cable

› Unlock the vehicle. The cover of the charging socket will be released.

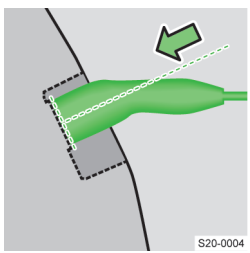


› Push on the charging socket cover and lift it open.

The indicator light in the charging socket lights up white.



› Remove the lower cover of the charging socket (DC).



› Insert the charging cable connector into the charging socket.

› Make sure the connector in the charging socket is inserted straight and all the way in.

The connector will automatically lock in the socket. The indicator light in the charging socket flashes white.

Starting the charging process

Charging starts automatically when the charging cable is connected.

Or:

› If required, start charging on the charging station.

The indicator light in the charging socket pulses green. The display in the instrument cluster shows the remaining charging time and flashes.

Charging automatically stops

When the upper charge limit of the battery is reached, charging stops automatically. The connector is unlocked in the socket and can be removed.

Manual termination of charging

› To terminate charging at the charging station, follow the instructions on the station.

When charging is complete, the connector will be automatically released. The indicator light in the charging socket lights green.

Or:

› Press the button for terminating charging immediately in the charging settings menu in the Infotainment system » page 244.

Charging will be terminated. The connector will automatically unlock in the socket.

To start charging again, you must remove the connector and then start the charging process from the beginning.

After charging

› If the connector is still locked in the vehicle's charging socket, the button on the key will release it.

› Pull the connector out of the charging socket.

› Replace the charging socket cap.

› Close the charging socket cover.

Charging set-up

Functionality

Tools for setting up charging

Use the following tools to set, for example, the delayed charging (to be completed by departure time) or the upper charge limit of the high-voltage battery:

› Charging set-up in the Infotainment system » page 244
› MyŠKODA application » page 173

Information on the delayed charging setting

If a departure time with charging is set, charging will start in a delayed manner so that it is completed at the set departure time. If a low tariff time range is also set, charging takes place preferentially in this time range.

If, after connecting the vehicle to the charging device, the charge level is lower than the set low charge limit, charging shall start immediately at the set limit regardless of the delayed charging and low tariff.

If the departure time is too early for charging to be fully completed, the high voltage battery will not be charged to the desired level at the time of departure. The charging rate depends on the infrastructure used and its settings.

If you need to start your journey earlier than the set departure time, charging may not have started yet or is still in progress.

› If possible, change the departure time in the Infotainment system menu or in MyŠKODA application before you set off.

Or:

› Press the button to start charging immediately in the Infotainment system menu or in MyŠKODA application.

Conditions for starting delayed charging

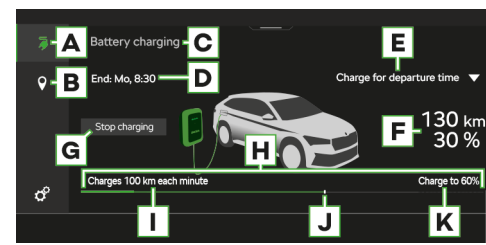
✓ The vehicle is connected to a charging device that allows delayed charging.
✓ Delayed charging is activated in the charging settings » page 244.

Overview

Displaying the main charging menu

› Turn on the ignition.
› Select the **MENU** > menu in the Infotainment system.

The following menu will appear:



A Charging display with presets and information
B Display of the charging points menu » page 246
C Selected charging point
D Overview of the preset preferences

E Charging mode selection (range depends on charging point settings)
- › Instant charging
- › Charging for the departure time
- › Charging and air conditioning for the departure time
- › Charging at preferred times

F Activate/deactivate automatic charging cable connector release

G Immediate start/end of charging

H High-voltage battery charge indicator

I Current charging speed

J Power consumption indicator during scheduled journey using navigation

K High-voltage battery upper charge limit

Other charging settings

› Tap ⚙.

The following menu will be displayed with the option to activate/deactivate these functions:

› Battery Care Mode
› Two-way charging (this function not yet available due to unavailable external device)
› Reducing AC charging current (applies to unsaved charging points)
› Automatic disconnection of the AC charging cable connector (applies to unsaved charging points)
› Plug & Charge

Battery Care Mode

The Battery Care Mode function helps extend the life of a high-voltage battery by automatically setting the upper charge limit to 80 %.

ⓘ You can increase the charge level on a one-time basis (e.g. before a long trip).

Plug & Charge

The Plug & Charge function allows user authorisation at the charging station without the need for additional accessories (e.g. RFID card/chip or mobile application).

The user authorisation takes place automatically when the charging cable is connected to the vehicle. The cost will be charged to the charging contract (e.g. Powerpass), that the user has selected in MyŠKODA application.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ The charging station supports the Plug & Chargefunction.
- ✓ The activation of a valid Plug & Charge contract for your vehicle is confirmed in MyŠKODA application.
- ✓ The *Online mode* is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The Plug & Charge application is activated in the Infotainment system.

If the Plug & Charge authorisation does not take place, proceed as follows.

› Deactivate the function in the Infotainment system.
› Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and reconnect it again after a while.
› Authorise yourself at the charging station in another way.

For more information on the Plug & Charge function, please use the following link or retrieve the QR code:

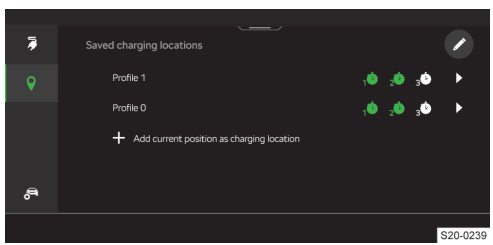
https://go.skoda.eu/plug-and-charge

Setting up the charging points

In the following menu, you can set frequently used charging points and their parameters in the individual preferences.

› Tap .

The following menu will appear:



› Select a charging point and one of the charging point preferences.

In the displayed preset, you can use the ▶ button to set up or enable the following parameters:

› Departure time
› Day/days of the week
› Repeat on the selected day/days of the week
› Interior cooling/warming
› Reduced charging current
› Immediate charging from a certain charge value

Charging starts immediately if the charge level of the high-voltage battery falls below the set value.

› Setting up the upper charge limit of the high-voltage battery
› Setting up charging during low tariff period
› Low tariff time range
› Automatic release of the charging cable connector

› Activate/deactivate the selected preset.

ⓘ The charging point can be renamed by pressing the ✎ symbol.

Video – Remote charging

Remote charging – setting

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-enyaq-remote-charging

Charging cables

General information on charging cables

What you should be mindful of

It is recommended to use only charging cables supplied by ŠKODA AUTO. They guarantee safety and correct function.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of short circuit and serious or fatal injuries!

› Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Have the charging cable checked regularly by a qualified service technician.

Instructions for handling the charging cable

› Protect the components of the charging cable from undue stress such as being run over, dropped, pulled, broken or bent over sharp edges.

› When unplugging from the power outlet or charging device, do not pull on the cable, but only on the connector.

› Put on the protective caps after using the charging cable.

› Keep the components of the charging cable away from intense sunlight (external temperature must not exceed 50 °C).

› Do not immerse the charging cable components in water or expose them to snow or ice.

› Before charging in cold weather, fit the cover ring supplied with the cable onto the charging connector. It protects the connection between the connector and the charging socket from freezing.

Before travelling abroad

Differences in electrical installations in various countries may be as follows:

› Types of domestic sockets and their use in various installations

› The type of connection to the mains, including fault precautions and measures for protection against electric shock, e.g. grounded mains in EU countries versus insulated mains in Norway. *» page 250*

Check that your charging cable is suitable for charging in the relevant country. If you are unsure about connectors and sockets, we recommend contacting your ŠKODA Service Partner.

Overview

Types of charging cables

› Charging cable for charging stations (Mode 3) » page 248
› Universal charging cable » page 248

Storage of charging cables

› Store the charging cables in the appropriate places in the luggage compartment:
› Space for stowing the charging cables » page 280
› Organiser in the luggage compartment » page 287
› Bag for stowing charging cables » page 287

Technical data and specifications

Information label on the charging cable connector

The information label informs about the compatibility of the charging components of the vehicle and the charging point.



C Connector type designation for AC charging.

Charging cable Mode 3

Overview



The charging cable can be used to charge your vehicle at public charging stations with alternating current (AC) that do not have an integrated charging cable.

Universal charging cable

Use

The universal interchangeable charging cable allows you to charge both from charging stations and regular/industrial sockets.

What you should be mindful of

It is recommended to use only charging cables supplied by ŠKODA AUTO. They guarantee safety and correct function.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of short circuit and serious or fatal injuries!

› Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.
› Do not use the charging cable together with an extension cable, cable drum, multiple socket, adapter or timer.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Have the charging cable checked regularly by a qualified service technician.

Warning symbols

Use the charging cable in a temperature range of -30 °C to +50 °C.

Use the charging cable up to 4,000 m above sea level

The charging cable is equipped with a switched protective wire.

Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Do not use the charging cable together with extension and drum cables.

Do not use the charging cable together with multiple outlets.

There is a risk of electric shock if used incorrectly.

Observe the related operating instructions, especially the warning and safety instructions.

Instructions for handling the charging cable

› Protect the components of the charging cable from undue stress such as being run over, dropped, pulled, broken or bent over sharp edges.

› When unplugging from the power outlet or charging device, do not pull on the cable, but only on the connector.

› Put on the protective caps after using the charging cable.

› Keep the components of the charging cable away from intense sunlight (external temperature must not exceed 50 °C).

› Do not immerse the charging cable components in water or expose them to snow or ice.

Before travelling abroad

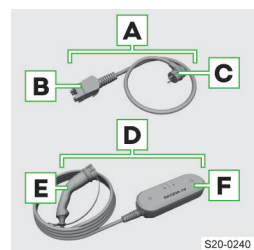
Differences in electrical installations in various countries may be as follows:

› The type of home sockets and their spread in various installations.

› The type of connection to the mains, including fault precautions and measures for protection against electric shock, e.g. grounded mains in EU countries versus insulated mains in Norway. » page 250

Check that your charging cable is suitable for charging in the relevant country. If you are unsure about connectors and sockets, we recommend contacting your ŠKODA Service Partner.

Overview



A Replaceable charging cable

B Replaceable charging cable connector

C Connector for the mains supply

D Charging cable with control box

E Connector for the vehicle charging socket

F Control box

Stowing of the charging cable

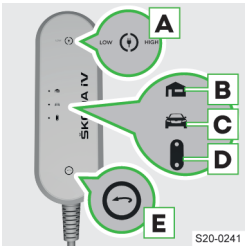
› Stow the charging cable in the appropriate locations in the luggage compartment:

› Charging cables storage area » page 280

› Organiser in the luggage compartment » page 287

Operation

Control box



A On/Off button with indicator light and charging current limit function

B Indicator light for the connector plugged into the power outlet

C Vehicle indicator light

D Control box indicator light

E Reset button with indicator light

Control box indicator light

illuminated
The charging cable is connected to the mains.

pulsating
The high-voltage battery is charging.

Indicator lights may also indicate faults » page 252.

Charging

› Plug the charging cable into the control box » page 251.

› Fully unwind the charging cable and connect it to the charging socket of a charging device or to a normal socket.

All indicator lights on the control box will briefly illuminate red.

› Insert the charging cable connector into the vehicle's charging socket.

The indicator light will illuminate. After a successful self-test, all indicator lights will turn green for two seconds. Charging starts automatically.

For more information, see the chapter on charging » page 241.

Settings

The following functions can be set on the control box:

› Charging current limitation

› Deactivation/activation of protective wire monitoring

Charging current limitation

Charging current limitation is used, for example, to prevent the charging cable from overheating.

› Hold the button for up to 2 seconds.

After the charging current value has been set, the indicator light flashes .

The set reduced value (LOW) is displayed to the left of the button.

The set unreduced value (HIGH) is displayed to the right of the button.

The universal charging cable is preset at the factory for a reduced charging current. The next time the cable is used, the last set value is used.

Deactivation/activation of protective wire monitoring

Operate the universal charging cable in properly grounded electrical networks with the protective wire monitoring activated.

If the electrical network is not grounded, deactivate the protective wire monitoring:

› Hold down the ⊕ and ⊖ buttons, until the ▮ indicator light flashes six times.
› Hold down the ⊕ and ⊖ buttons, until the ▮ indicator light flashes six times.

If the electrical network is grounded, activate the protective wire monitoring:

› Hold down the ⊕ and ⊖ buttons, until the ▮ indicator light flashes six times.

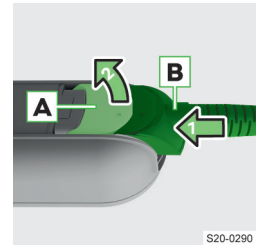
The 🏠 and 🚗 indicator lights go out and ⊕ pulses.

Connecting and disconnecting the charging cable

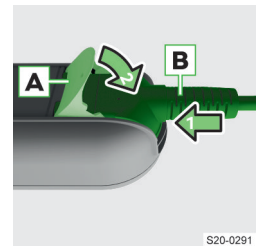
⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!
The following conditions must be met before handling the cables:
› The charging process of the high-voltage battery must be completed.
› Charging plug must be removed from the vehicle's charging socket.
› The charging cable must be disconnected from the electrical socket.

Plugging the replaceable charging cable into the control box

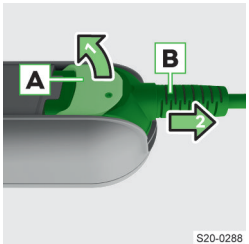


› Partially insert the B connector into the control box.
› Remove the A cap.

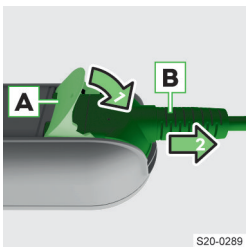


› Push the B connector all the way in.
› Close the A cap.

Disconnecting the replaceable charging cable from the control box



› Remove the A cap.
› Partly pull the B connector out.



› Close the A cap.
› Pull the B connector out completely.

Troubleshooting

pulsating, illuminated
The mains plug is overheated, the charging current will be limited.

After cooling down, charging will continue without restriction.

› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ This may be caused by connecting a multi-phase socket as a single-phase socket. It is recommended to have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.

illuminated, illuminated
The electrical socket is overheated, the charging current will be limited.

After cooling down, charging will continue without restriction.

ⓘ It is recommended that you have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.

illuminated, flashing
Power grid is unstable, charging is interrupted.

Once the power grid has stabilised, charging will resume.

ⓘ It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

illuminated, flashing
Power grid is overloaded, charging is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.

ⓘ It is recommended to have the electrical network checked by a professional technician.

illuminated, flashing
The power grid protection wire is broken or missing.

› If the power grid is grounded, seek the assistance from a specialist garage and have the power grid checked by a specialist.
› If the power grid is not grounded, deactivate the protective wire monitoring » page 250.

illuminated, flashing
The power grid is incorrectly connected, charging is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

illuminated, illuminated, flashing
The control box has detected a faulty current, charging is interrupted.

› Press the button for several seconds.
› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

pulsating, illuminated
The control box is overheated, the charging current will be limited.

Or:

illuminated, illuminated
The control box is overheated, charging is interrupted.

After cooling down, the error is automatically rectified and charging continues.

› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, flashing or illuminated
Or:

illuminated, illuminated, illuminated
Control box fault, charging is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

It is recommended that you have the power grid checked by a specialist.

flashing, illuminated
Serious control box fault, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

pulsating, illuminated
Protection wire monitoring deactivated.

› If the power grid is grounded, activate the protective wire monitoring » *page 250*.

illuminated, flashing
Fault in the vehicle charging system, charging is interrupted.

After the vehicle charging system has stabilized, charging will resume.

› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Or:

illuminated, illuminated
Fault in the vehicle charging system, charging is interrupted.

› Stop charging, disconnect the charging cable and reconnect it again after 60 seconds.
› If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, flashing
Charging cable fault, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminated, illuminated
Or:

illuminated, illuminated
Malfunction of the indicator lights, charging is interrupted.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Technical data and specifications

Specification	Set 1 – 000 054 412 P	Set 2 – 000 054 412 Q
Nominal power	11 kW	7.2 kW
Power supply	3 phases, 16 A	1 phases, 32 A
Operating voltage	100–240/400 V	100–240 V
Nominal power	16 A	32 A
Car connector	Type 2	Type 2
Connector to charging station	Industrial socket 400 V / 16 A	Standard EU socket
Total cable length	6 m	6 m
Weight	3.5 kg	3.3 kg
degree of protection	IP55	IP55

Space under the front flap

Front flap

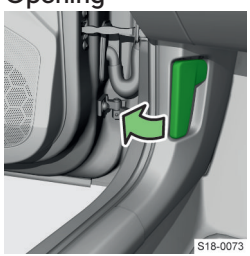
Open front flap

Before opening

› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.

› Keep everyone away from the space under the front flap.

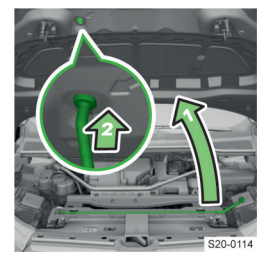
Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



› Release the lock.



› Open the bonnet.

› Remove the bonnet stay from the holder and insert the end of the stay into the opening in the bonnet.

Closing

› Lift the bonnet.
› Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
› Fold the bonnet down and release it with a distance of 20 cm remaining.
› Check that the bonnet is closed.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
› Open and close the flap again.

Troubleshooting

Snow in the space under the front flap

In winter weather conditions, snow may collect in the space under the front flap. Thawed snow can then form a pool of water under the vehicle. This is not a defect.

Coolant

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ Ignition off

Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the space under the front flap!

› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

ⓘ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.

› Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap immediately after the ignition is stopped and turned off.
› Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

To refill the coolant additive use G12evo (TL 774 L).

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Status display in the instrument cluster display

 lights up or flashes – the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low

› Check the coolant level.

The coolant level is OK:

› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » *page 266*.

The fuse is OK, the indicator light comes on or flashes again:

› **Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.**

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

› Stop driving.
› Turn ignition off and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

12 volt vehicle battery and fuses

12 volt vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12-volt vehicle battery


Wear safety goggles!


The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.


Keep fire, sparks and open light away from the 12 volt vehicle battery! Do not smoke!


When charging the 12 volt vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!


Keep children away from the 12 volt vehicle battery!


Note the instructions in the owner's manual!

Functionality – Protection against discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

Possible causes for the discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Worn 12 volt vehicle battery
› Low temperatures
› Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

Automatic system-related discharge protection measure with regard to the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power

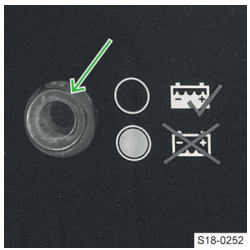
Checking and charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The condition of the 12 volt vehicle battery is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12 volt vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



› Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.
› Black colour – the acid level is OK.
› Colourless or pale yellow colour – acid level is too low, the 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced.

Charging

The 12-volt vehicle battery is automatically charged when the high-voltage battery is charged.

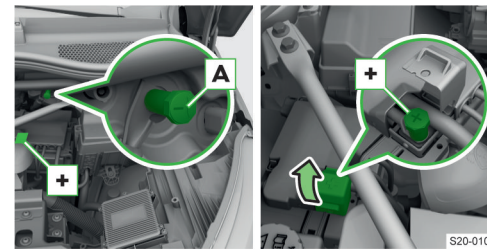
If required, the 12 volt vehicle battery can be charged using a 12 volt charger.

Requirements for charging a 12 volt vehicle battery

✓ Ignition off
✓ Power consumers switched off

12 volt vehicle battery charging

To charge the 12 volt vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Under the front flap: Earth point and ⊕-pole for battery charging

A Earth point
\+ ⊕-pole for charging the 12 volt vehicle battery (under the cover cap)

› Open the cover cap of the ⊕- pole for battery charging.
› Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ pole for battery charging.
› Connect the ⊖terminal of the charger to the earth point A.
› Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
› After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
› Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12 volt vehicle battery.
› Lock the cover cap of the ⊕-pole for battery charging into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.

› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 volt vehicle battery.

› Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

A flat 12 volt vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

Fault in charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery



illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop driving!

› Turn ignition off and seek the help of a specialist garage.

12 volt vehicle battery fault



illuminates together with ⚠

A message in the display of the instrument cluster indicating a fault on the 12 volt vehicle battery or on secondary systems.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The state of charge of the 12 volt vehicle battery is insufficient



illuminates together with ⚠

A message in the display of the instrument cluster regarding low charge or discharged 12 volt vehicle battery and the power supply, if required.

› Travel a distance of several kilometres to charge the 12 volt vehicle battery.

Or:

› Charge the vehicle. The 12-volt vehicle battery is charged simultaneously when the high-voltage battery is charged.

Or:

› Charge the 12 volt vehicle battery with a charger.

Worn 12 volt vehicle battery



illuminates together with ⚠

A message in the display of the instrument cluster regarding exchange of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting, replacing

The 12-volt battery is located in the space under the bonnet . The 12-volt vehicle battery may only be disconnected and connected by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the high-voltage system!

› Do not change, dismantle or disconnect the 12-volt vehicle battery. Improper handling can damage the high-voltage battery.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

Usage

With the help of jump start cables, a vehicle with a discharged or defective 12-volt vehicle battery can be put into operation using the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

- Do not jump start the car with the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  - The discharged 12-volt vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12-volt vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below zero.
  - The acid level in the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low » *page 258*.

Use jump start cables with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

Nominal voltage of both vehicle batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the current-supplying 12-volt vehicle battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery.

Use another vehicle's 12 volt vehicle battery to operate the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury! Danger of damage to vehicle!

- Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

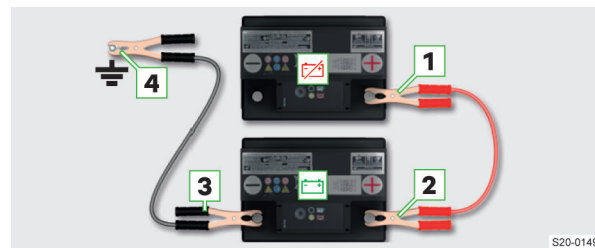
ⓘ NOTICE

Short circuit!

- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
- The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12 volt vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
- The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable

- Switch off the ignition.
- Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



discharged 12 volt vehicle battery

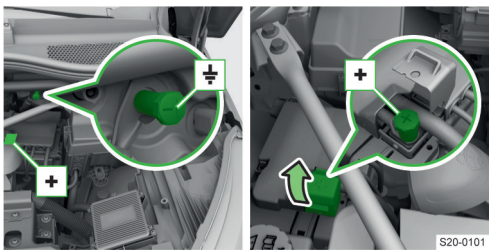
current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

1 ⊕-pole of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery

2 ⊕-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

3 ⊖-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ Earth point of the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery



Under the front flap: Ground point / ⊕-pole of the 12-volt vehicle battery (under the cover cap)

Start the vehicle

› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with combustion engine)

Or:

› Switch on the electric drive of the vehicle supplying power (applies to vehicles with an electric motor).

› Switch on the ignition of the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

› If the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is not ready to run within 10 s, repeat the process again after approximately 30 s.

Disconnecting the cable

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.

› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

› We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

High-voltage system fuse (fuse for rescue workers)

The high-voltage system fuse is provided with a yellow sticker so that the emergency services can switch off the high-voltage in the vehicle as quickly as possible.

⚠ WARNING

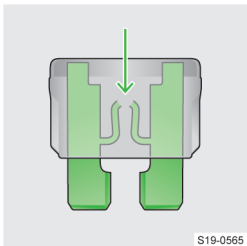
Danger to life or risk of an electric shock and serious burns!

› Do not change the high-voltage system fuse yourself!

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.

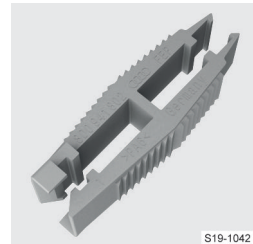


Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Driver door opened
- ✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



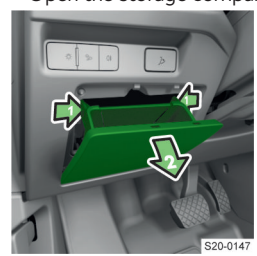
› Replace the fuse with the clip located under the cover of the fuse box in the space under the front flap.
› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Accessing the fuses – the left–hand drive

› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



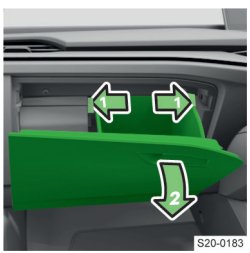
› Press the latches and tip the box.
› Replace the fuse.
› Close the fuse box.

Accessing the fuses – the right–hand drive

› Open the glove compartment on the passenger's side.



› Release the box brake pull pin.

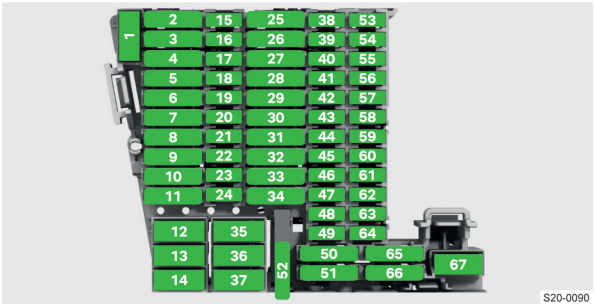


› Press the latches and the box will swing out.



› Open the fuse box cover.
› Replace the fuse.
› Close the fuse box cover.
› Replace the box and pull the brake pin.
› Close the fuse box.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	230-volt power socket
2	Airbags
3	Towing bracket
4	Front camera for assist systems
5	Exterior lighting of the rear of the vehicle
6	Interior lighting, front grille lighting
7	Front seat heating
8	Sliding/tilting roof
9	Window controls (left side of the vehicle), central locking (left side of the vehicle), left wing mirror (heating, folding, glass position adjustment), electric child lock (left side of the vehicle)
10	Not used

Fuse number	Consumer
11	Towing bracket
12	Not used
13	Central locking (rear doors and boot lid), windscreen washers, headlight washers, headlights tilting function
14	Music amplifier
15	Not used
16	Not used
17	Rear radar sensors, Park Assist, Parking Aid
18	Steering wheel lock, KESSY (keyless locking), contactless operation of the electrically operated boot lid
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, online services
20	Phone box, USB ports at the front
21	Rear view camera, area view system (Top View)
22	Engine control system
23	Communication system
24	Not used
25	Driver's seat belt tensioner
26	Window controls (right side of the vehicle), central locking (right side of the vehicle), right wing mirror (heating, folding, glass position adjustment), electric child lock (right side of the vehicle)
27	Passenger's seat belt tensioner

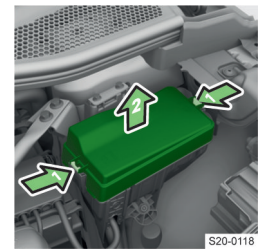
Fuse number	Consumer
28	High-voltage battery control system – safe disconnection of the high-voltage system, high voltage battery charger The fuse may only be replaced by a specialist garage
29	Towing bracket
30	The Infotainment system
31	Towing bracket
32	Exterior vehicle lighting, third brake light, registration plate lighting
33	Not used
34	Heating / air conditioning
35	Rear seat heating
36	Heating/air conditioning fan
37	Electrically operated boot lid
38	Seat ventilation
39	Steering wheel heating
40	Alarm system horn
41	Data bus
42	Gearbox control, gearbox mode display
43	Air conditioning at the front, air conditioning at the rear, rear window heating
44	Front interior lighting, parking brake, rain and light sensor, lights control, alarm system, diagnostic socket, dashboard button panel.

Fuse number	Consumer
45	Control lever under the steering wheel
46	The Infotainment system, Head-up display
47	Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)
48	Not used
49	Not used
50	Not used
51	Not used
52	12-volt socket in the boot
53	Not used
54	Not used
55	Not used
56	Not used
57	Not used
58	USB at the rear
59	Interior rear-view mirror with automatic darkening
60	Diagnostic connection, radio
61	Drive system
62	Not used
63	Not used
64	Not used
65	Not used
66	Rear wiper
67	Rear window heating

Fuses in the space under the front flap

Overview

Access to the fuses



- Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and remove the cover.
- Change the fuse.
- Fit the cover and click into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	Not used
2	ESC assist system, BDM control system, coil of the main relay
3	Charger for the high-voltage battery, electric drive
4	Left headlight
5	Right headlight
6	Radar sensor in the front
7	Not used
8	Not used
9	Horn
10	Windscreen wiper
11	Air conditioning + heating
12	Engine sound generator
13	ESC assist system
14	Not used
15	ESC assist system
16	Radiator fan
17	Heated windscreen
18	Not used
19	Not used
20	Not used
21	Not used
22	Not used
23	Engine control system
24	Radiator fan
25	Coolant pump, electric heating
26	Coolant pump, radiator shutter
27	Not used
28	Not used
29	Not used
30	Not used
31	Not used
32	Brake servo

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.

› Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.

› Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.

› Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

› Incorrect tyre pressure

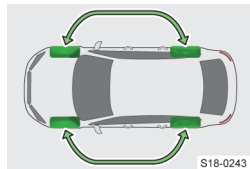
› Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking

› Incorrect wheel alignment

› Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes

Applies to vehicles with 109 and 132 kW electric motors.



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicles with 150, 195 and 220 kW electric motors are fitted with different wheel sizes on the front and rear axle.

› Do not change the wheels on these vehicles.

Advice for tyre assembly

› With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.

› Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for certain countries and models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 235/55 R 19 101 T

235 Tyre width in mm
55 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
19 Wheel diameter in inches
101 Load index
T Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

100 800 kg
101 825 kg
102 850 kg
103 875 kg

Speed symbol

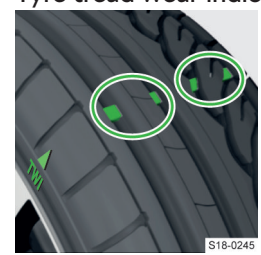
The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load bearing capacity and speed for the tyres fitted.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

When checking the tread depth, all wear indicators must be checked.

A tyre is considered worn out if one or more wear indicators are flush with the tread.

ⓘ The tread depth can be measured using a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the boot lid flap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Check the tread depth regularly.

› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 18 22 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 18th week of the year 2022.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

› Breakdown kit **» page 275**.

Change of tyre pressure

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› Select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition in menu **MENU** > > .

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tire provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tire manufacturer's sticker provides information about the adhesion on ice.

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

› In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.

› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu **MENU** > > > *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Tyres* .

› Select *Tyres* – select them and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!

› Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

› Only mount the snow chains on the rear wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains:

Rim size	Tyre size
8Jx19 ET45	235/55 R19
8Jx18 ET45 a)	235/60 R18 a)
8Jx19 ET45	255/50 R19

a) Applies to vehicles with 109 kW electric engine.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 9 mm.

SEAL tyres

Usage

The SEAL tyres have increased resistance to air leakage when punctured.

When replacing SEAL tyres with standard tyres, the vehicle must have a breakdown kit.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

› Spare wheel, jack and wheel bolt wrench are not included.

› If a tyre is damaged, use the tyre repair kit.

› If the damaged tyre cannot be repaired using the tyre repair kit, seek the assistance of a specialist garage or contact your breakdown assistance service.

🛈 Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before changing

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.

› Switch off the ignition.

› There must be no persons in the vehicle during the wheel change.

› Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.

› If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

› The jack is not included in the vehicle equipment. To lift the vehicle, use a jack with a capacity corresponding to the maximum permissible weight of the loaded vehicle.

› When lifting the vehicle, follow the instructions in the jack manufacturer's instruction manual.

› Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.

› Make sure no body parts are positioned under the raised vehicle.

› Do not switch on the ignition of the raised vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

After replacement

› Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.

› In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.

› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 120 Nm.

› Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.

› Replace the damaged tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.

› Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not grease or lubricate screws.

› Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Removing the bolts

› If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » page 278.

› If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » page 278.

⚠ WARNING

› If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



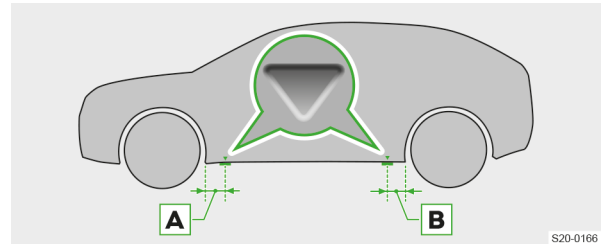
› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.



› Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
› Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.



A 20 cm
B 17 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

The jack is not included in the vehicle equipment.

To lift the vehicle, use a jack with a capacity corresponding to the maximum permissible weight of the loaded vehicle.

When lifting the vehicle, follow the instructions in the jack manufacturer's instruction manual.

› Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
› Lift the vehicle so that the wheel is off the ground.

Changing a wheel

› Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
› Carefully remove the wheel.
› Fit the replacement wheel.
› Contact tighten the bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from ŠKODA.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

› Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.

› Refit the wheel bolt caps » *page 278*.

Or:

› Refit the full wheel covers » *page 278*.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Breakdown kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

› Switch off the ignition.

› Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.

› Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.

› If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

After using the kit

If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

› Do not continue driving. Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0 – 2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre

› Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.

› If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value, at least 2 bar, and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!

› Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

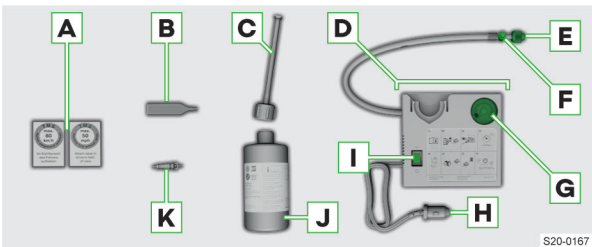
⚠ WARNING

Risk of getting burned!

The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.
› Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



- A Sticker with speed indication
- B Valve remover
- C Inflation hose with plug
- D Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
- E Tyre inflation hose
- F Button for pressure reduction
- G Pressure indicator
- H 12 volt cable connector
- I ON and OFF switch
- J Tyre inflation bottle
- K Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

› The rim is damaged.
› The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
› Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
› There is damage to the tire sidewall.
› The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Using the kit

Sealing the tyre

› Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
› Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
› Shake the sealant bottle.
› Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
› Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
› Remove the filler hose from the valve.
› Screw on the valve insert.

Inflate the tyre

› Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Insert the compressor plug into the 12-volt socket.
› Switch on the compressor.
› When the pressure reaches 2.0 – 2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

Observe the maximum compressor run time specified by the kit manufacturer.

› If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
› Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
› Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
› Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each long journey.
› Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
› After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

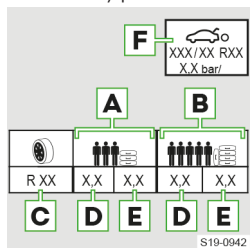
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Label with the specified tyre pressure values

The sticker for storing tyre pressure readings is located on the centre body pillar on the driver's side.



A Tyre pressure in case of partial load
B Tyre pressure when fully loaded
C Tyre diameter in inches
This information only relates to the specified tyre pressure. It is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.
D Tyre pressure reading for the front tyres
E Tyre pressure reading for the rear tyres
F Specified tyre pressure value for the temporary wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› Select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition in menu MENU > > .

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached

› Sporty driving style

› Driving on dirt roads

› Snow chains fitted

Saving tyre pressure values

Saving tyre pressure values

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment system.

› Tap the function surface in the displayed Infotainment system menu.

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the tyre pressure needs to be saved

› Change of tyre pressure

› Change of one or more wheels

› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle

› Always after 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Functional restriction / system fault

flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

› Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

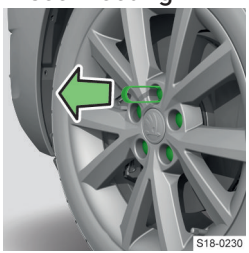
If the indicator light flashes again after turning on ignition, there is a system fault.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting



› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
› Remove the cover cap.

Installing

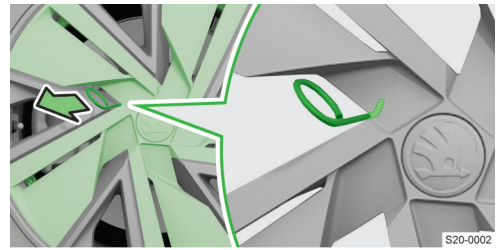
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Removal

Applies to factory built or original accessory aero trims from ŠKODA.



› Hang the hook as close to the centre as possible to remove the wheel covers at the edge of the panel.
› Pull off the centre of the wheel cover by loosening it and pulling off the trim.

For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

Applies to factory built or original accessory aero trims from ŠKODA.

› When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.
› Position the panel on the wheel rim and push in the individual spokes of the panel one after the other until they are fully engaged.
› Press in the centre of the wheel cover until it engages completely.

NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removal

Does not apply to aero trims. Applies to other factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

› Hang the hook for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the hook, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

Does not apply to aero trims. Applies to other factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

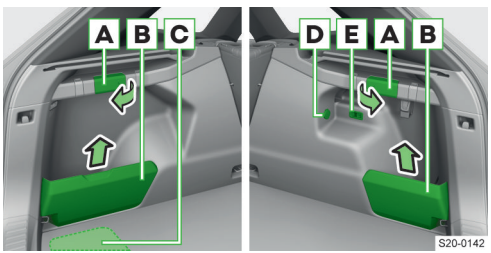
ⓘ NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Equipment in the boot

Overview



- **A** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **B** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **C** Under the floor covering: Storage compartment for the charging cable
- **D** 12 volt socket
- **E** Trailer hitch switch

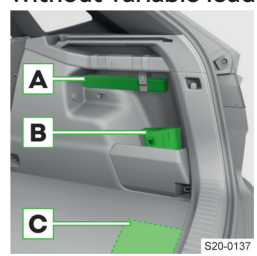
NOTICE

› Do not put dirty or wet charging cables in the storage compartment under the floor covering.

Emergency equipment

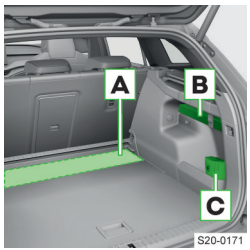
Overview

Emergency equipment in the boot of a vehicle without variable loading floor



- **A** Placing of the warning triangle
- **B** Positioning of the first-aid kit and the tool kit (depending on equipment)
- **C** Tool kit (depending on equipment)

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment of a vehicle with the variable loading floor



A Tool kit
› To access the vehicle tool kit, remove the variable loading floor.

B Placing of the warning triangle

C Placing of the first-aid kit

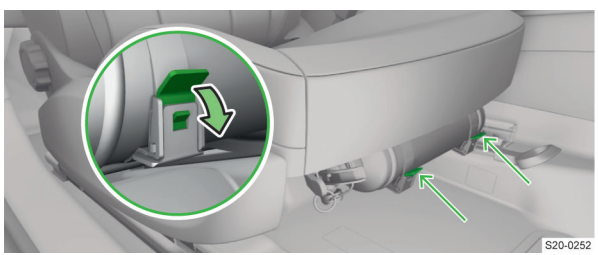
ⓘ To access the vehicle tool kit more easily, fold the rear seat on the right and remove or insert the tool from the area of the rear seats.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

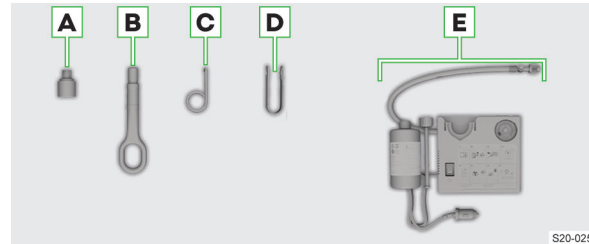
Only valid for some countries.



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



A Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

B Towing eye

C Hook for removing the full wheel covers

D Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps

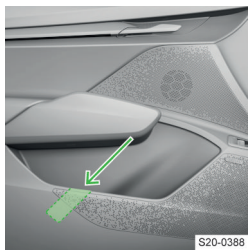
E Tyre repair kit

In some countries, a tyre pressure gauge may also be included.

⚠ NOTICE

When using the pressure gauge, take care not to damage the valve.

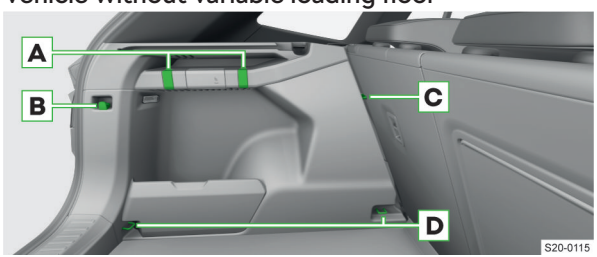
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

Overview

Vehicle without variable loading floor



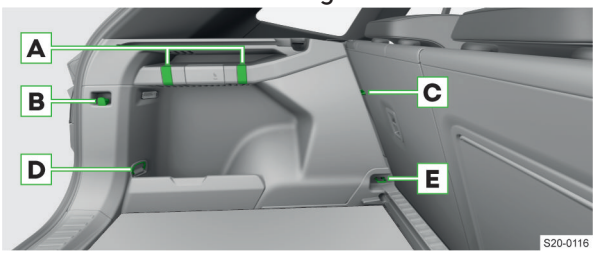
A Fold-out bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Fastener for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 75 kg

Vehicle with variable loading floor



A Fold-out bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg

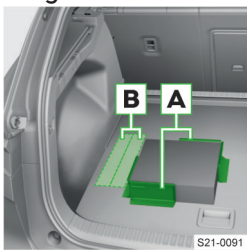
B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Fastener for securing the fastening nets

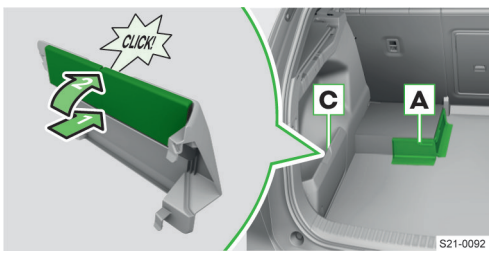
D Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 75 kg

E Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 75 kg

Cargo elements



Variant with two cargo elements



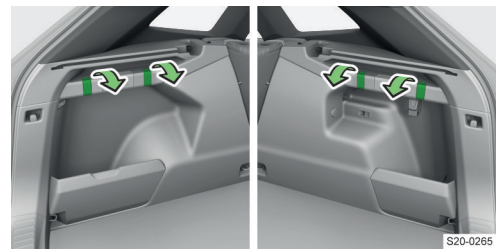
Variant with one cargo element

A Cargo-Element
Max. load 8 kg
› Fold up the Cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

B Storage compartment for the Cargo elements under the floor covering in the boot

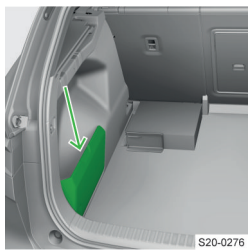
C Stowing compartment for Cargo-Element in the storage compartment

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment



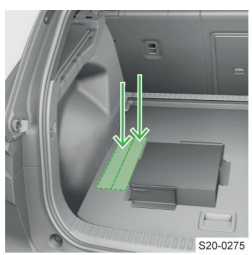
The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot



The maximum load for the Cargo element is 8 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage space

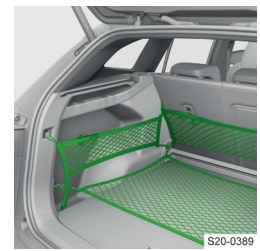


Space for stowing Cargo elements is under the variable loading floor.

The maximum load of Cargo elements is 8 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview

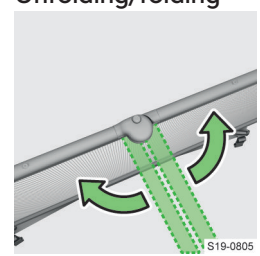


The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

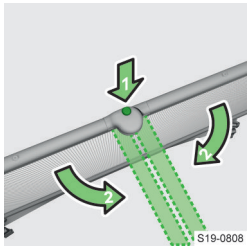
Net partition

Attach the net partition

Unfolding/folding



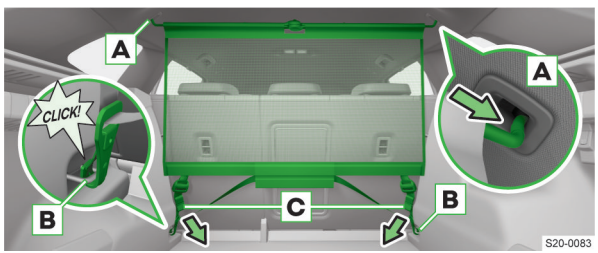
› Open the arms of the cross bar until you hear the locking button audibly click into place.



› Press the safety button and fold the arms of the crossbar together.

ⓘ The folded mesh partition can be stowed under the variable loading floor.

Attach at the back



› Remove the roll-up cover or fold up the rear seat backrests.
› First insert the crossbar into the mount **A** on one side and push it forwards.
› Fix the bar in the same way on the other side.
› Snap the carabiners **B** into the lashing eyes.
› Pull the straps firmly at the free ends **C**.

Fasten in the front

The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Loosening

Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

Double-sided floor covering

Overview

The vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

Operation

Extending



› Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

Retracting



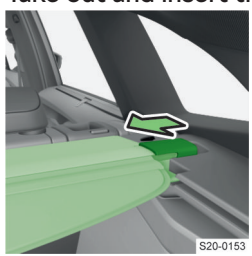
› Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions.

Removing and inserting

Take out and insert the roll-up cover



› Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor

› Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

› Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift it in the rear area.



› Insert the cover into the recesses in the panel under the loading floor.

› Fold the free part of the cover forwards with the handle.

Variable loading floor in the boot

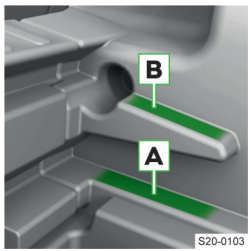
Setting the position

The variable loading floor can only be adjusted in the front area.

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.



› Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.



- To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on space B.
- To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.



- Press the variable loading floor forward as far as it can go and place it.

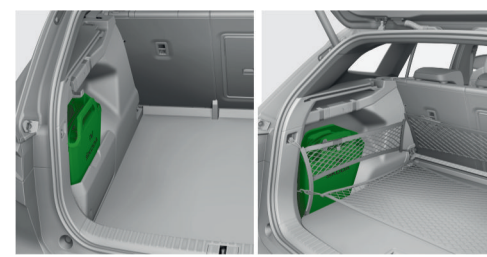
Removing and inserting

- Lift the variable loading floor up to a distance of about 15 cm below the boot cover and then remove it.
- Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Organizer in the boot



Charging cable pocket



The maximum load for the pocket is 3 kg.

The pocket can be placed in the storage compartment or secured with the fastening net.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury!

The charging cables can be ejected out of the bag in the event of an accident.

› Store the cables in the bag only if the rear seat backrests are correctly locked in the vertical position.

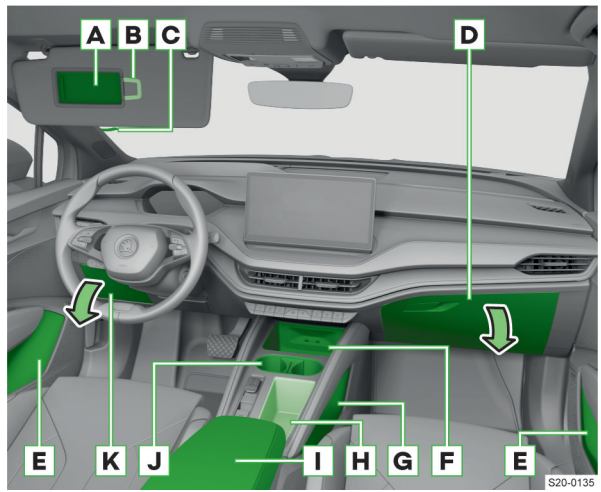
ⓘ NOTICE

› Only use factory-supplied charging cables for charging stations (mode 3) in the bag.

› Do not put dirty or wet charging cables in the bag.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Car park ticket holder

D Storage tray

Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.

Max. load 3 kg

In the compartment, there is a card holder, a pen holder and a storage compartment for coins.

Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

Max. load 1.5 kg

The compartment has a storage compartment for coins.

› Pull the handle to open the compartment.

E Storage tray

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Storage compartment for the waste container

› Storage compartment for the reflective vest

F Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Phonebox

› USB-connections

The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.

G Storage tray

H Storage tray

I Openable armrest with storage compartment

In the compartment, there is a storage compartment for the tablet, a bottle rack with a content of max. 0.5 l, a removable compartment, and a removable compartment that can be closed, depending on the equipment.

The removable compartment can be stowed away in the rear area of the storage compartment **G** .

J Cup holder

K *Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.*

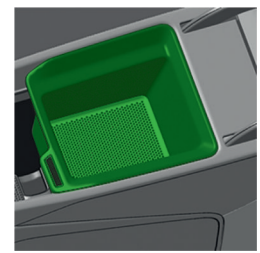
Storage tray

Max. load 0.25 kg

A card holder is located in the compartment.

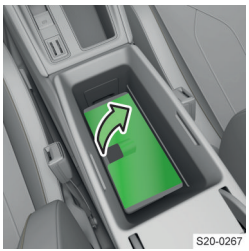
› To open, press the button.

Removable compartment under the armrest



The maximum load for the compartment is 0.5 kg.

Removable compartment under the armrest that can be closed

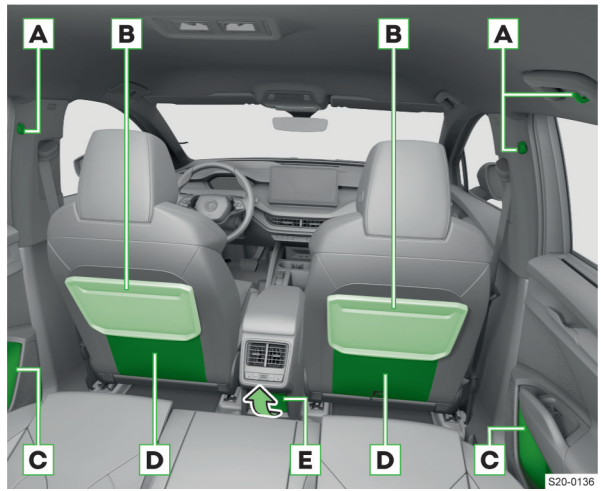


The maximum load for the compartment is 1 kg.

› Grasp the compartment in the area of the recess in the middle part and remove it.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

B Folding table

C Storage tray
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
› Storage compartment for the reflective vest

D Storage pocket
› Telephone pocket

E Depending upon vehicle equipment:
› 230 volt socket and USB connections

The USB connections are for charging only.
› USB-connections

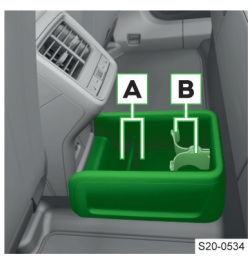
The USB connections are for charging only.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Storage compartment in the centre console

Overview



A Storage tray
B Cup holder

The maximum load for the compartment is 1 kg.

A drinks holder is located in the compartment.

The holder can be folded to the edge of the compartment.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
› Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Removal and Insertion

Inserting



› Insert the compartment with the front area under the edge of the centre console.
› Press in the rear side of the compartment until it stops.
› Check that the compartment is locked properly.

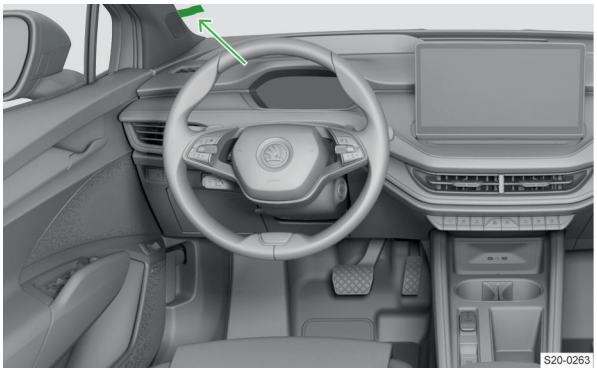
Removal

Removal takes place in the reverse order of installation.

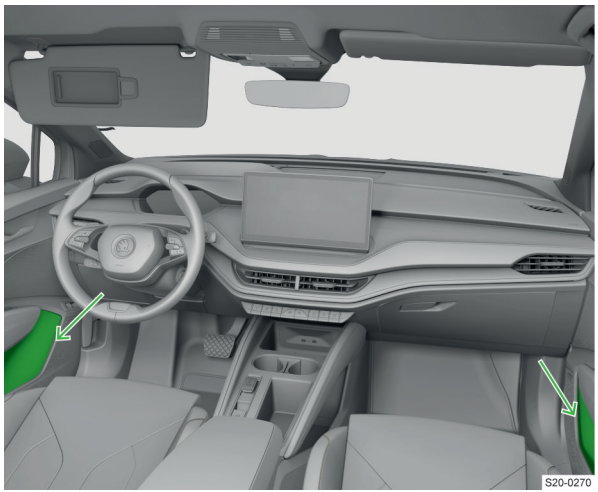
Storage pocket for phone



Car park ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



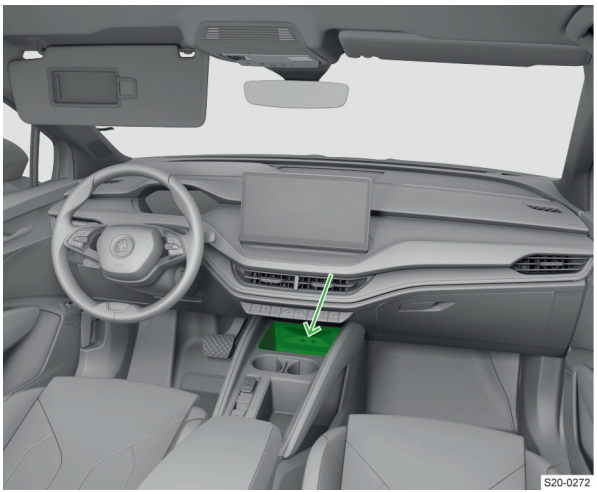
The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

USB-connections



The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.



The USB connections are for charging only.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar

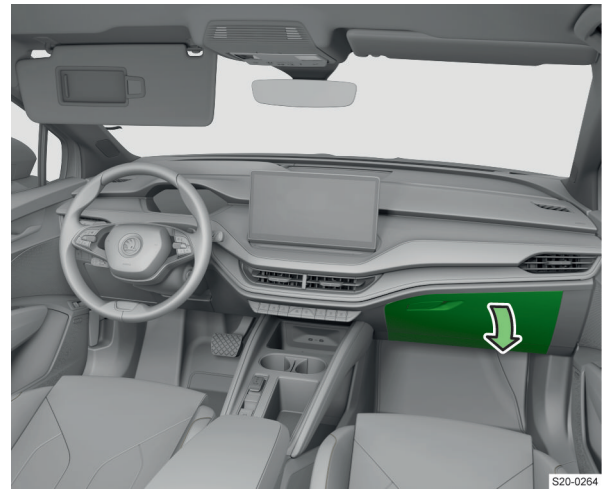


The maximum coat hooks load is 2 kg.

⚠ WARNING

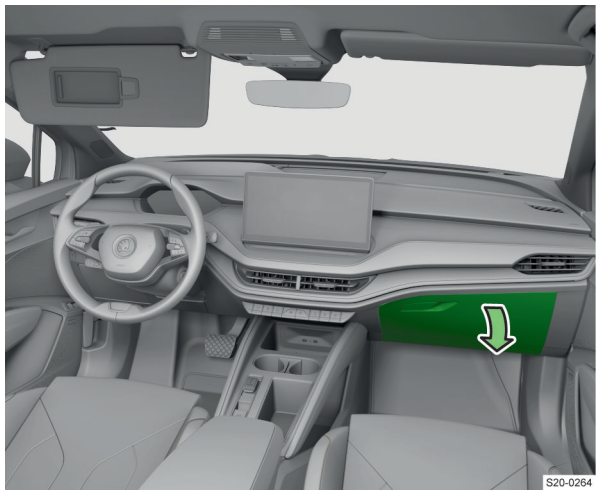
- Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Pen holder

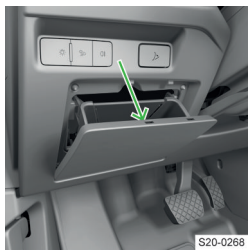




Storage space for cards and coins



Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview



NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!

› In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.

› Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

› The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.

› Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Function Phone box

› Wireless phone charging.

› Amplifies the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

Phone box is located at the front of the centre console storage compartment. The phone box is located on the driver's side.

Insert a phone no larger than 163 x 83 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging indicator

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

› – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.

› – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.

› The symbol is not displayed – the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged/ the function is not available.

Recommendations for optimal function

› The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.

› Insert the phone without its protective case.

› Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.

✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system display shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged.

› Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Replace the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

› Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

⚠ CAUTION

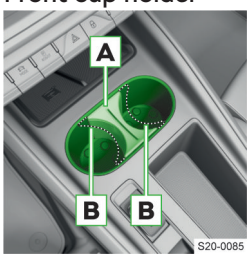
Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Front cup holder



A Adjustable part with card holder

B Extreme position of the adjustable part

The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

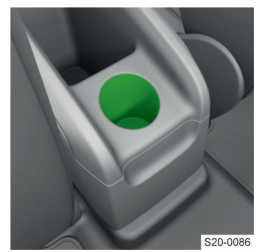
ⓘ NOTICE

› Insert the adjustable part so that the side grooves are not visible.

Rear cup holder



› To open, flip the lid.



Cup holder Easy Open



The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Ashtray

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burning or fire!

› Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.

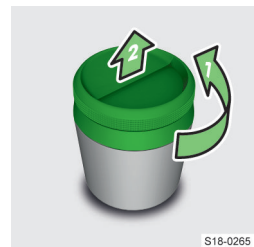
Operation

The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

Open the ashtray



Remove the lid



Folding table

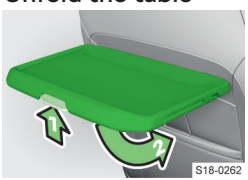
Operation

Fold up the table



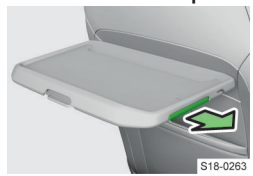
› Press the safety button and fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table



› Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder



The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

Ceiling

Removing and inserting

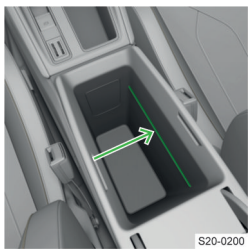
The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations:

› On the guide rods of the front headrests

› In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

Storage compartment for the tablet

Overview



› Secure the tablet with a rubber band.

12-Volt power socket

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!

› Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

› Switch off the loads before switching the ignition on or off.

230-Volt power socket

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

› Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.

› Switch off the loads before switching the ignition on or off.

Functionality

Status display

› Lights up in green - the socket is switched on.

› Green light flashes – the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off, if a load was connected before the engine was switched off.

ⓘ The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

Troubleshooting

The indicator light flashes red

The socket is turned off e.g. for the following reasons:

› Excessive current

› Low state of charge of the 12-volt vehicle battery

› Overheating of the socket

› If the reasons given above no longer exist and the socket is not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected load from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

230 volt socket and USB connections



The USB connections are for charging only.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Technical data

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.

The roof cross beams are attached to the roof rail.

› We recommend using roof bars from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or unsuitable tow hitch can damage the high-voltage components of the vehicle in an accident and thus deepen the consequences of the accident or cause fatal injuries.

› Due to the specific structure of the vehicles with high-voltage batteries, we recommend using only the original ŠKODA tow hitch. With these accessories, ŠKODA stands for safety, reliability and suitability for this vehicle type.

› We recommend that all related assembly work be carried out by ŠKODA service partners.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the trailer coupling carefully.

› When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!

› When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Swinging the tow bar in and out

Swinging the tow bar out



› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will swing out. The ⊸ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Push the towing arm until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the ⊸ switch illuminates.

Swinging the tow bar in

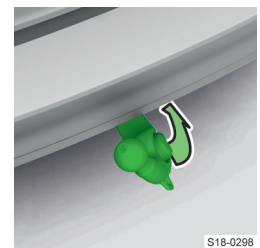
⚠ NOTICE

› No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.

› A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will release. The ⊸ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Swing the tow bar back under the bumper until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the ⊸ switch illuminates.

Coupling and uncoupling the trailer or accessories

The following information describes how to couple and uncouple a trailer. The information also applies to other accessories, e.g. the bicycle rack.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.

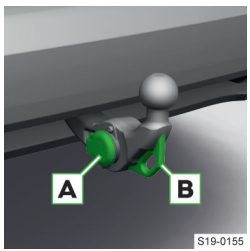
› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling

› Swing the tow bar out.

› Place the trailer onto the ball head of the tow bar.



› Insert the electrical plug into the socket A.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet B.

The breakaway cable must sag in all trailer settings against the vehicle.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling is done in the reverse way.

Trailer power supply

When the vehicle is electrically connected to the trailer, the trailer is powered from the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!

The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error

The indicator light inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

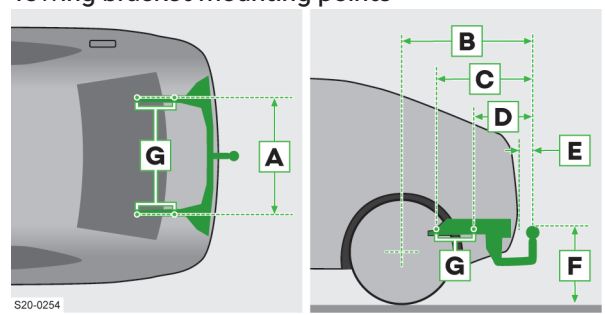
Tow bar not locked

illuminates

› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data and specifications

Towing bracket mounting points



A Mounting points spacing

B Length of rear overhang to the centre of the tow ball

C Distance of the front mounting point to the centre of the tow ball

D Distance of the rear mounting point to the centre of the tow ball

E Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the tow ball (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

F Distance of the centre of the tow ball to the ground (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)

G Mounting points on the bodywork

Value in mm	
A	994
B	1098
C	630
D	410
E	at least 65
F	350 – 420

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used is 75 kg.

The specifications for your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation, e.g. vehicle registration documentation, COC document, or you can get them from your ŠKODA Partner.

Other data, e.g. on the type plate of the towing device, only provide information on the test values of the device.

Tow bar load with mounted accessories

When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks,, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

The maximum length of the mounted accessory, measured from the ball of the towing bracket, must not exceed 70 cm.

The total permissible mass of the mounted accessories including the load must correspond to the maximum vertical load on the towing ball when using the trailer, the value being indicated in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the value of the maximum vertical load of the towing ball with the trailer used is higher than 75 kg, the total permissible mass of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value is applicable if the centre of gravity of the load is not more than 30 cm from the tow ball.

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the tow ball is greater than 30 cm, the maximum permissible total weight of the accessory including its load must be reduced, e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball by one half.

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball of the towing bracket is 70 cm, then the total permissible total mass of the accessory including its load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.

› The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!

› When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals

Compliance with the service intervals and maintenance procedures is crucial for the life and preservation of the vehicle's value. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and void the warranty. In particular, failure to replace and refill the operating fluids on time can lead to irreversible damage to the engine and its components.

You will be notified of the service due date by the symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster display.

The specialist garage will inform you of the service interval, the option to change this and the scope of the service.

All service inspections and replacements or refills of operating fluids are covered by the customer even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements specify otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the Digital Service Plan information system.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Displaying the service due date

› Select the menu MENU > > > from the Infotainment system for service.

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals, which can result in vehicle malfunctions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories and ŠKODA Genuine Parts. These guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.

Authorised workshop ŠKODA

All ŠKODA authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Genuine Parts

We recommend using ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts are fully compliant with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

ŠKODA authorised workshops are liable for any defects on ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

ŠKODA genuine accessories

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA authorised workshops are liable for any defects on ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult a ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-fitted with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in the event of an unauthorised installation in another vehicle (e.g. following a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Leatherette / Suedia / Fabric

NOTICE

› Remove any dirt as soon as possible.
› Do not use any leather polish, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover or similar agents for the Suedia seat covers.
› Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
› Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric
› If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

› Over time, Suedia and leather materials may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.
› Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.
› Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel
› Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna
› Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.
› Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!
› Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
› Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts
› Do not dry clean the seat belts.
› Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Leatherette / Suedia / Fabric

› Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
› Remove recent stains with water, a slightly moistened cotton cloth or a woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.
› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

[1)] A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
› When cleaning Suedia and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a special cleaning glove. Remove any pilling with a brush.

Plastic parts
› Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows
› Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen
› Before cleaning, switch off the Infotainment system
› Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of screen damage
› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Digital instrument cluster display, Head-up display
› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of screen damage
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats
› Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts
› Remove dirt with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.[1)]

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.
› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

ⓘ NOTICE
› Bird droppings, insect residues, street and sea salt residues, etc. must be removed as soon as possible.
› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

ⓘ NOTICE
› Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
› Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

› Do not polish panels.
› We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate materials from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.
› Do not use abrasive cleaners to clean the reversing camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Follow the standard guidelines, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, unscrew the rod of the roof antenna, etc.
› Move the windscreen wiper lever to the **OFF** position.
› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, follow the car wash guidelines.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle needs to move freely in the car wash, the following conditions must be met before entering:

✓ Ignition on
✓ Selector is in N position
✓ Electric parking brake is switched off
✓ Deactivated Auto Hold function

ⓘ NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

› Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with wax protection

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Washing with a pressure washer

ⓘ NOTICE

› Follow the operating instructions for the pressure washer, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spraying distance from the vehicle surface.
› Do not direct the water jet at the following vehicle parts:
  › Components of the high-voltage system, e.g. charging socket, high-voltage cables, etc.
  › Space under the bonnet
  › Films
  › Lock cylinders
  › Gaps on the vehicle
  › Towing bracket socket
  › Tilting towing arm
  › Camera lenses and sensors
  › Plastic, chrome and anodised parts

Removing snow and ice

ⓘ NOTICE

› Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.
› Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
› Only move the scraper in one direction.
› Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
› Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
› Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Cleaning charging cables

⚠ WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

› Only clean the charging cable after disconnecting it from the vehicle and the charging point.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the charging cable!

› Water must not get into the contacts of the charging cable.

› Wipe the charging cable with a dry cloth.

› For heavy soiling, use a damp cloth without any detergent.

› If you do not use the charging cable for a long time, clean it before using it again.

Instructions for cleaning

High Voltage System Instructions

› Stop charging and close the charging socket.

› Switch off the ignition.

› The components of the high-voltage system must not be damaged, e.g. the orange cables.

Hand washing

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash mitt and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.

› Use a mild soap solution on the foils and headlights [1].

› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.

› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.

› Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.

› Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

› Do not dry clean the headlights or use sharp objects.

› Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.

› The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60°C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Protect the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.

› Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal and not a defect.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

› sunlight

› moisture

› air pollution

› stones, e.g. due to rebounding of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

---

[1] A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove any spilled wax with a plastic scraper and remove stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical effects.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

› After washing, preserve the wheels using a suitable product.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Excessive dirt on the wheels can unbalance them.

Towing bracket

› If necessary, lubricate the ball of the towing bracket with suitable grease.

Ice scraper

In the luggage compartment lid



Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The information listed was determined in accordance with rules and under conditions that are stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner.

The details in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can have a negative impact on this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption, which are specified in the vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The vehicle is equipped with equipment in accordance with the requirements of the applicable EU-Regulations with the CE (Conformité Européenne) are provided. For the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland) this marking corresponds to UKCA (UK conformity assessed)unless otherwise stipulated by law.



Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found in the following locations:

- in the space under the bonnet on the right
- on a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- on the type plate at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar



Type plate

- **A** Vehicle manufacturer
- **B** Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN display

VIN can be displayed in the Infotainment system under **MENU** > > > service.

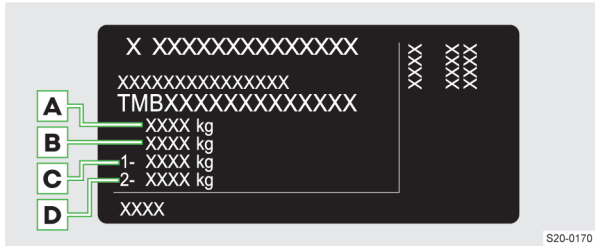
Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the right middle body pillar of the vehicle.



- **A** Maximum permissible gross weight
- **B** Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- **C** Maximum permissible front axle load
- **D** Maximum permissible rear axle load

Payloads

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components:

- The weight of the passenger
- The weight of all luggage and other loads
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 305

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!

› Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This also includes 75 kg as the driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tools.

Operating weight

	Operating weight (kg)
109 kW electric motor	1941
132 kW electric motor	1999
150 kW electric motor	2111
195 kW electric motor	2205
220 kW electric motor	2258

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions

Specification		Value (in mm)
Vehicle height	109 kW electric motor	1,619
	132 kW electric motor	1,621
	150 kW and 195 kW electric motor	1,620
	220 kW electric motor	1,605
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors		2,002
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors		2,148
Ground clearance	Electric engine 109 kW	186
	Electric engine 132 kW	188
	150 kW and 195 kW electric motor	187
	Electric engine 220 kW	– a)
Vehicle length		4649/4653 b)

a) The values were not available at the time of going to press.

b) Applies to vehicles with 220 kW electric motor

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, further referred to as “EDR”. The purpose of EDR is to record data during a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic events, further referred to as an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records, for example, the following data in the short period of time in which the accident occurred (approximately 10 s):

› The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
› The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
› Actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
› The vehicle's speed

The recorded data allows how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident to be analysed. This helps to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. For example, whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the time, whether they were only partially available or inactive. It is also possible to track whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions include:

› Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
› Assistant for keeping your lane (Lane Assist)
› Park steering assistant
› Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age and location of the accident is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect the EDR content to other data sources to help identify the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes.

The ignition must be on and special equipment used to read the EDR data.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data is displayed using the following link or by reading the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio system manufacturers declare that these systems comply with the requirements of the 2014/53/EU Directive.

Ukraine

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legislation of Ukraine

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 as follows:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeomans Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/AB regulation it acts as an importer[1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

---

1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/EU regulation it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial ŠKODA

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD–2020, mun. Chișinău

Israel

1.3 Israel – MoC, SII

55–10341: Conformity approval number of the Ministry of Communications

Due to the risk of radio frequency interference, changes to the equipment that could affect the wireless function of the equipment, including changing the software, replacing the original aerial, or adding the ability to connect to an external antenna, are prohibited without the approval of the Department of Communications.

Name of device: the Infotainment system display

Manufacturer Name: LG Electronics

Name and address of importer:

Champion Motors Ltd.

9 Halechi St.

Bnei Brak 51100

Israel

Model: LCW05-SKE5

Country of production Vietnam

Brand: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the ŠKODA website:

- Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market
- Information on the Technical Regulation on radio equipment approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017
- Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers

To view the information, please use the following link or load the QR code:

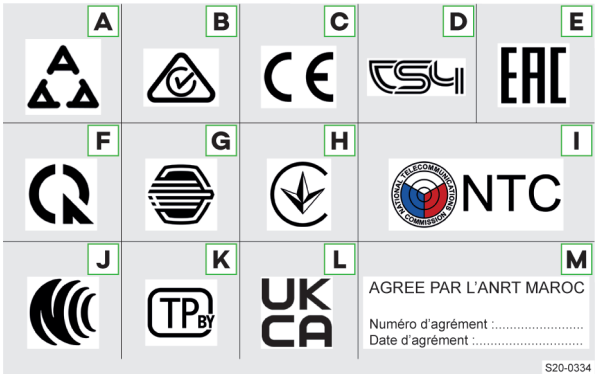
https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.



- A Serbia
- B Australia and New Zealand
- C Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- D Armenia
- E Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)
- F Vietnam
- G Mongolia
- H Ukraine
- I Philippines
- J Taiwan
- K Belarus
- L Great Britain
- M Morocco

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Central locking remote control key	433.05 – 434.79 MHz	10 mW
Central electronics unit	434.42 MHz	–
Independent heating remote control	868.2 – 868.4 MHz 868.7 – 869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Independent car heating	868.2 – 868.4 MHz 868.7 – 869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Keyless car unlocking	434.42 MHz 125 kHz	32 µW 40 dBµA/m
WLAN – hotspot	2412 – 2472 MHz 2400 – 2483.5 MHz 2402 – 2442 MHz 2408 – 2480 MHz 5180 – 5825 MHz 5190 – 5795 MHz	14 dBm 10 dBm 20 dBm 4.1 dBm 11 dBm 9 dBm
WLAN 2.4 GHz	2412 – 2480 MHz	63 mW
WLAN 5 GHz	5745 – 5850 MHz	25 mW
Bluetooth	2402 – 2480 MHz	20 mW
Infotainment	MW (AM): 531 – 1602 kHz FM: 87.5 – 108 MHz DAB: (BAND III): 174.928 – 239.2 MHz Bluetooth: 2400 – 2483.5 MHz	– – – 10 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	111 kHz	42 dBµA/m
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76 – 77 GHz 24.050 – 24.25 GHz	23.38 dBm <20 dBm
Instrument cluster with integrated immobiliser	AM: 125 +/-10 kHz	1.108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52 – 1.7 MHz FM: 87 – 108 MHz DAB: 174 – 240 MHz GNSS: 1559.052 – 1605.375 MHz	– – – –

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) GSM1800 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500–2570 MHz / downlink: 2620 – 2690 MHz) LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832–862 MHz / downlink: 791 – 821 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0.125 W LTE: 23 dBm/0.2 W
RSAD boxes	Receiving frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz) Transmitting frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6,2 dBm e.i.r.p.
Analog instrument cluster: Global / Basic / Medium	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8"	125 kHz	33.69 dBµA/m (at a distance of 3 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Applies to Germany

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end-user, you have a legal obligation to surrender used batteries.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

- Used batteries can be dropped off at a ŠKODA Partner in EU member states and other countries.
- High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a ŠKODA Partner.
- For more information on take-back and recycling, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol.

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

- Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
- You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
- For more information on take-back and recycling, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

Product recycling



S22-0001



S22-0002



ⓘ Triman logo and the Infotri symbol contain important sorting information for the end consumer.

Trademarks Information

Some terms in this Manual have an ® or a ™ symbol. They identify a mark or a registered trademark. However the absence of a label does not mean that the terms can be freely used.

Other product designations are trademarks or service marks of the respective rights owner.

- **“AdBlue®”** is a registered VDA trademark.
- **“Android Auto™”** is a registered trademark of theGoogle Inc company.
- **“Apple CarPlay™”, “Siri®”** are registered trademarks of the Apple Inc company.
- **“Bluetooth®”** is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc company.
- **“HDMI, logo HDMI”** are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- **“MirrorLink®, logo MirrorLink®”** are registered trademarks of Car Connectivity Consortium LLC.
- **“Windows®”** is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA Partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is properly documented, together with the vehicle identification number (VIN), in the “Vehicle handover documentation” section in this document.

ŠKODA Warranty for new vehicles

In addition to the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA Partners provide you with the ŠKODA new vehicle warranty (hereinafter referred to as the “ŠKODA Warranty”) under the following terms and conditions.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, ŠKODA Partners provide the following benefits[1]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs on your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects that occurs on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.
- Free repair of the high-voltage battery if the defect occurs within 8 years or before the mileage of 160,000 km/ 100,000 miles is reached (whichever comes first) from the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.

  A reduction in the capacity of a high-voltage battery over time is a natural manifestation of technology and is not a defect within the meaning of the ŠKODA Warranty (it is natural wear and tear), provided that this value, as measured by a ŠKODA Service Partner, does not fall below 70 % of its original total usable capacity before 8 years or 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.

  The total usable capacity of the high-voltage battery at the start of the ŠKODA Warranty is stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (hereinafter referred to as “the original total usable capacity”).

  The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a ŠKODA Partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[2].

  ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

  Fault rectification under the ŠKODA Warranty shall be carried out by replacing or repairing the deffective parts. This also applies to the high-voltage battery and its components. It is up to the ŠKODA authorised workshop to decide how the defect should be rectified. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the ŠKODA authorised workshop's capabilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA authorised workshop.

  If a defect within the scope of the ŠKODA Warranty is manifested in the form of an excessive reduction in the capacity of the high-voltage battery, the total usable capacity of the battery shall

---

1) In some countries, ŠKODA Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the ŠKODA Warranty terms and conditions listed here. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, please refer to the purchase contract with your ŠKODA Partner or the accompanying documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the ŠKODA Warranty can only be exercised with ŠKODA Partners who have agreed to provide such a warranty.

2) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

reach at least the following level after the defect has been rectified:

- 78 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle before 3 years, or before the mileage of 60,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- 74 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle in the period between 3 to 5 years, or before the mileage of 100,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- 70 % of the original total usable capacity if this defect occurs itself on your vehicle in the period between 5 to 8 years, or before the mileage of 160,000 km is reached (whichever occurs first) from the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA authorised workshop. The defect must be notified within the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty, if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally in accordance with the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when the claim was made under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to a specialist company or was not properly remedied.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, bulbs, 12-Volt vehicle batteries, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, making other modifications or technical changes of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorised use, incorrect handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions, overloading or commercial passenger transport), incorrect care or unauthorised maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, including, but not limited to, failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time or failure to follow the instructions for charging the high-voltage battery.
- Using the vehicle as a stationary power source or removing and then using the high voltage battery outside the vehicle.
- Exposing the high voltage battery to water or other liquids.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

If the vehicle is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the ŠKODA Warranty are transferred to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the car.

ŠKODA Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Guarantee provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the ŠKODA authorised workshop, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA authorised workshop may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Guarantee are only valid if your vehicle suffers a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty with your new car, ŠKODA Partners offer free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA Warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

Defects may only be remedied under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA authorised workshop decides on the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the ŠKODA authorised workshop's capabilities.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty, the warranty against corrosion of the body and the high-voltage battery warranty are unaffected by the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

ⓘ The ŠKODA Mobility Guarantee and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available for certain countries.

Engine specifications

Electric engine 109 kW

Power (kW)	109
Highest torque (Nm)	220
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	11.1

Electric engine 132 kW

Power (kW)	132
Highest torque (Nm)	310
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.7

Electric engine 150 kW

Power (kW)	150
Highest torque (Nm)	310
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.5

Electric engine 195 kW

Power (kW)	195
Highest torque (Nm)	425
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	6.8

Electric engine 220 kW

Power (kW)	220
Highest torque (Nm)	460
Maximum speed (km/h)	180
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	6.5

Index

Numbers and symbols

12 volt vehicle battery 258
Charge 258
Checking the condition 258
Discharge protection 258
Fault: 260
Safety 30
see 12 volt vehicle battery 258
Warning lights 260
12-volt vehicle battery
Disconnecting and connecting 260

A

ABS 197
ACC 204
interrupting the cruise control 206
setting the distance 206
START-STOP system 204
Accident
Data recorder 318
Accident data recorder 318
Adaptive Cruise Control 204
Adaptive suspension 188
Air conditioning
see Climatronic 100
Airbag 80
Deactivating airbags 81
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 82
Fault: 82
Installation locations 81
Release 80
Safety 80
Alarm system 45
Trailer 46
All-season tyres 270
Ambient lighting 94
Applications for the Infotainment system 183
Armrest
front 63
rear 64
Ashtray 299
ASR 197
Assist systems
Driver assist 197
Park Assist 218

Safety 34
Assist systems for emergency situations 216
Auto Hold 195
Automatic Braking
See Front Assist 199
Automatic gearbox 186
Automatic recuperation assistant
see Eco Assist 217

B

Backrest
Load-through device 64
Battery acid 258
Boot 280
12 volt socket 280
Double-sided floor covering 285
Fasteners 282
Fastening nets 284
Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 280
Net partition 284
Roll-up cover 285
see Boot lid 53
Storage compartments 280
Trailer hitch switch 280
Variable loading floor 286
Boot lid 54
Automatic locking 54
Boot lidContactless operation 56
Manual operation 53
to be set to the highest position 55
Troubleshooting 56
unlock manually 57
Brake fluid 193
Safety 30
Brake pads 193
Brakes 192
Breakdown call 183
Bulbs 92
BulbsFront turn signal - Replacing 93

C

Car adaptations
Safety 29
Car seat
see Child seat 71
Cargo elements 282
Ceiling 300
Central locking 41
SAFE function 41
Central locking button 42
Centre console 20
Charging 235
Charging setting options 244
Charging socket 235
Low charge level 239
Setting up charging points 246
Troubleshooting 238
Charging cable
Stowing 280
Charging cables 247
Mechanical release of the connector from the charging socket 240
Mode 3 248
Types of charging cables 248

Charging time 237
Charging your phone wirelessly 297
Checking the vehicle before the journey 31
Child lock 47
Child seat 71
Fastened with a safety belt 74
Grouping 73
i-Size 76
ISOFIX 74, 78
on the passenger seat 72
Recommended child seats 73
Securing children properly 33
TOP TETHER 78
Types of fasteners 78
Cleaning the vehicle
Exterior 311
Instructions for cleaning the exterior 313
Instructions for cleaning the Interior 310
Interior 309
Climatronic 100
Setting up classic air conditioning 103
Setting up smart air conditioning 101
Start the operating menu 101
Comfort flasher 87
COMING HOME 90
Commissioning the vehicle
Using the jump-starting cable 261
Compartments 288, 290
Configuration wizard 118
Control Centre 123
Coolant
Checking 256
Indicator light 257
Refilling 256
Safety 30
Specification 256
Cooling system 101
Crew Protect Assist
See Proactive Occupant Protection 215
Cruise control
Indicator light 202
Cruise control system 202
Cup holder 298
Cybernetic security 142

D

Data connection 174
Daylight running lights 86
Automatically switch on and switch off 86
DCC 188
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 82
Display 82
Digital assistant Laura 124
Digital cockpit 110
Digital instrument cluster
see digital cockpit 110
Distribution of the cargo 189
Door
Open/close 47
Drive power 233
Driver Alert 216
see fatigue detection assistant 216
Driver's seat 19
Driving data 112

Resetting 113
Driving with a trailer
Safety 34
Dynamic cornering lights 89
Activate/deactivate 90
Dynamic Light Assist
see headlight assistant 91

E

e-sound 196
Earth point 261
Eco Assist 217
Economical driving style 189
EDL 197
Electric parking brake 194
Electric windows 49
Activation 50
Force limiter 48
Operation 49
Troubleshooting 50
Electrical parking brake 194
Electronic brake force distribution 198
Emergency
Emergency call 36
Using the jump-starting cable 261
What to do after an accident 37
What to do in the event of a fire 37
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 216
Emergency calls 36
Emergency equipment 280
Tool kit 281
Emergency wheel
Safe driving 34
Energy recovery 188
Engine number 315
Equipment in the boot 280
ESC 197
ESC Sport 197, 198
Exit warning 224
Explanations 13
Exterior
lighting 84
Exterior mirrors 67
Extinguisher 281

F

Fasteners in the boot 282
First aid kit 280
Flooring in the boot 285
Fog lights
Rear 88
Fogging 105
Folding table 300
Force limiter 50
Front Assist 199
Distance warning 199
Front flap 255
Front seats
Electrically operated child lock 58
Manually operated boot lid 58
Front vehicle area 17
Fuses
in the dash panel 263

H

Hazard warning light system 89
Head-up display with augmented reality 111
Headlight Assist System 91
Headlights
Dynamic cornering lights 89
Headlight range control 85
Headrests 62
Heated steering wheel 109
Heated windscreen 107
High-beam assist system 90
High-voltage battery 230
Charging with alternating current 241
Charging with direct current 242
High-voltage system 230
HOME menu 117
Hook
in interior 290
in the luggage compartment 282

I

i-Size 76
Ice scraper 18
Indicator lights
Overview 22
Information call 182
Infotainment online 183
Infotainment screen 121
Infotainment settings 119
Instrument cluster
digital cockpit 110
Intelligent park steering assistant 225
Troubleshooting 227
Interior
lighting 93
Interior background lighting 94
Interior equipment
Cup holder 298
Space for a tablet 301
Interior fittings
12 volt socket 280, 301
230 volt socket 290, 301
Ashtray 299
Car park ticket holder 288
Coat hook 290
Folding table 300
Make up mirror 288
Map pockets 290
Storage compartment for the umbrella 296
Storage compartment in the centre console 291
Storage compartments 288, 290
Ticket holder 288
Interior lighting 93
Interior rear-view mirror 66
ISOFIX 78
Mounting eyelets 78
Placement in the seat 74

J

Jump start cables 261

K

Key 39
Key switch for airbag deactivation 82
Display 82
Key switch for the front passenger airbag
Key switch faulty 83
Keyless locking (KESSY) 44
Keypad 122

L

Lane Assist 208
See Lane Assist 208
Lane change assist
See Side Assist 212
Lateral area of the vehicle 17
LEAVING HOME 90
Lever
Headlight Assist 92
Light assist 91
Main beam 87
Turn signal 87
Windscreen wipers and washers 96
Liability for faults
see Warranty 326
Lifting the vehicle 272
Light 84
Automatically switch on and switch off 86
Bad weather light 88
Clean headlights 97
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 85
Dynamic cornering lights 89
Hazard warning light system 89
Headlamp flasher 87
Headlight Assist System 91
Headlight range adjustment of headlights 85
Indicator light 88
Main beam 87
Parking light 89
Replace light bulbs 92
Turn signal 87
Light Assist
see high beam assistant 90
Light switch 84
Lighting
Ambient 94
background 94
Interior 93
outer 84
Lighting range 85
Lights
Control 84
Fog lights 88
Troubleshooting 86
Limiter
see speed limiter 201
Load-through device 64
Lock 44
Locking 41
Locking elements 263
Change 263
space under the front flap 266
Low beam 86
Luggage compartment

Transporting objects safely 33

M

Main beam 87
Headlight Assist System 91
MATRIX headlights
see headlight assistant 91
MCB 197
Media 138
Memory function of the seat 59
MENU menu 118
Mileage 233
Mirror
see exterior mirror 66, 67
Mobile device management 142
Monitoring the surroundings
see Area View 221
MSR 197
Multi-collision brake
see MCB 197

N

Navigation 162
Net partition 284
Nets 284
New vehicle or new parts 28

O

Online services
Availability 173
MyŠKODA application 173
Personal data 175
Setting personal data protection 176
Shop 181
ŠKODA Connect 172
ŠKODA Connect services 183
ŠKODA Connect services user registration and activation 175
System update 180
Online Services
Breakdown call 183
Information call 182
Personalisation 180
User management 177

P

Park Assist systems 218
Park steering assistant with memory function 228
Troubleshooting 229
Parking
Parking aid 218
Rear Traffic Alert 223
Rear view camera 220
Stop the vehicle safely! 35
Parking aid 218, 219
Parking brake 194
see electric parking brake 194
Parking light 89
ParkPilot
see Parking aid 218
Passenger seat 20
Pedestrian Detection 200
Personal data 318
Personalisation 180

Phonebox 297
Power sockets
12 volt socket 301
230 volt socket 301
Safety 31
Power-assisted steering 66
Predictive Adaptive Cruise control 204
Preferred functions 118

R

Radio
DAB radio 130
FM radio 127
WEB radio and Podcasts 133
Radio systems in the vehicle 319
Range 232
Rear fog light 88
Rear seats
Folding down 61
Rear Traffic Alert 223
Rear vehicle area 18
Rear view camera 219, 220
Operation 221
Recirculated air mode 101
Recycling 325
Refilling
Coolant 256
Windscreen washer fluid 98
Reflective vest 280
Release 44
Remote access to the vehicle 183
Remote iV services 183
Restarting the Infotainment system 119
Rights arising from defective performance
see Warranty 326
Roll-up boot cover 285
Roof rack 303
Roof load 303
Safe driving 34

S

SAFE – function 41
Safe driving 34
Safety
Before your journey 28
Car adaptations 29
Child seat 33
Driving through water 34
Emergency call 36
Exiting the vehicle 35
Indicator lights 34
New vehicle or new parts 28
Sensors and cameras 29
Sitting correctly 31
Transporting loads and objects 33
Weather conditions 36
Webbing route 32
What to do after an accident 37
What to do in the event of a fire 37
SEAL tyres 271
Seat belts 69
Adjusting the height 71
Automatic belt retractor 69
Belt tensioners 69

correct arrangement 32
Fastening and unfastening 70
Reversible belt tensioner 70
Safety 69
Seat beltsBlocked strap 71
Status display 69
Seat heating 108
Seat massage function 60
Seat ventilation 108
Seats 58
Folding down 61
Heating 108
ISOFIX 78
Memory function of the seat 59
Sitting safely 31
TOP TETHER 78
Ventilation 108
Service events 308
Displaying the due date 308
Intervals 308
Resetting information 308
Service position for windscreen wiper arms 99
Service work 308
SET button 114
Setting the tyre pressure 277
Shop 181
Side Assist 212
Side light 86
see Parking light 89
Sliding/tilting roof 50
electric operation of the sun blinds 52
Operation 51
SmartLink 156
Android Auto 158
Apple CarPlay 159
MirrorLink 161
Snow chains 271
Sound 119
Space for a tablet 301
Space under the front flap 21
Open bonnet 255
Safety 29
Spare wheel
Safe driving 34
Speed limiter 201
Indicator light 201
Stand-by air conditioning 106
Setting the departure time 107
Steering column lock 66
Steering wheel 65
Buttons 65, 111
Correct position 32
Heating 109
Storage 288, 290
Storage compartment in the centre console 291
Sun protection 53
electric operation of the sun blinds 52
Sun protectionOperation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 52
Switching low beam on automatically 86
System 119
System update 180

T

Technical data 315
Technical data and specifications
Vehicle dimensions 317
Telephone 146
The Infotainment system update 119
Tips for economical driving 189
Tips for faster charging 237
Tool kit 281
TOP TETHER 78
Mounting eyelets 78
Top View 221
Tow hitch 303
Troubleshooting 305
Tow rope 191
Towing a trailer 189
Trailer Stability Assist 198
Towing bracket
Tow bar loading 305
Towing device
Swinging the tow bar in and out 304
Towing eye 191
Towing the vehicle 191
Traffic accident
Emergency call 36
What to do after an accident 37
Traffic Sign Recognition 214
Trailer 189
Alarm system 46
Coupling and uncoupling 304
Permissible load 190
Safe driving 34
Trailer Stability Assist 198
Transport
Roof rack 303
Tow hitch 303
Transporting objects safely 33
Transporting children 33
Travel assist
see Travel Assist 210
Travel Assist 210
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 198
Turn signal 87
Type plate 315
Tyre pressure monitor 277
Tyres 268, 270
Breakdown set 275
Overview of labelling 269
Pressure 276
Tread wear indicator 269
tyre pressure gauge 281
Tyre pressure monitor 277

U

Umbrella 296
Universal charging cable 248, 254
Control box 250
Exchanging the replaceable cable 251
Troubleshooting 252
Unlocking 41
USB 288, 290
User management 177

V

Variable loading floor in the boot 286
Vehicle adjustments
Recommendations 308
Vehicle dimensions 317
Vehicle driving mode 187
Comfort 187
Eco 187
Individual 187
Normal 187
Sport 187
Traction 187
Vehicle height 317
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 315
Vehicle length 317
Vehicle status 113
Vehicle width 317
Vest
see reflective vest 280
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 315
Voice control 124

W

Wallbox 235
Warning lights
Foreword 22
Warning triangle 280
Warranty 326
Mobility Warranty 326
New vehicle warranty 326
Optional Extended Warranty 326
Rights arising from defective performance 326
Washing in a car wash 311
Washing with a pressure washer 311
Weight 316
Wheels 268
Aero full wheel covers 278
Breakdown 270
Changing 271, 272
Full wheel cover 278
Overview of tyre labelling 269
Pressure change 270
Snow chains 271
Tread wear indicator 269
Tyre pressure 276
Tyre pressure monitor 277
WheelsCover caps for the screws 278
Wi-Fi 153
Window 49
Heating 107
Windscreen washer fluid
Windscreen washer fluidHow is the washer fluid refilled? 98
Windscreen washer fluidLevel too low 98
Windscreen washer system
see windscreen wiper and washer 96
Windscreen wipers and washers 96
automatic rear window wiping 97
automatic wiping 97
Refilling windscreen washer fluid 98
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 99
Unfold the windscreen wiper arms 99
Windscreen washer fluid level too low 98

Winter tyres 270

X

XDL + 197